



**NetCE**  
Continuing Education

# 2025 CONTINUING EDUCATION FOR PENNSYLVANIA APRNs

Scan this QR code  
to get started.  
If you do not have a  
smartphone or QR code  
reader, please visit  
[NetCE.com/PAAPRN25](https://NetCE.com/PAAPRN25).



**30 Hours**  
(8 Pharmacology Hrs)  
**\$48.95**

INSIDE THIS EDITION  
**Child Abuse Identification  
and Reporting**  
**The B Vitamins**  
**Chronic Cough in Adults**  
**Pathophysiology: The Hepatobiliary System**



JOINTLY ACCREDITED PROVIDER™  
INTERPROFESSIONAL CONTINUING EDUCATION

In support of improving patient care, NetCE is jointly accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), the Accreditation Council for Pharmacy Education (ACPE), and the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC), to provide continuing education for the healthcare team.

**[NetCE.com/PAAPRN25](https://NetCE.com/PAAPRN25)**

**We report your Child Abuse credit within 24 hours.**

**We offer Pain Management/Opioid CE  
(see Course Availability List, pg 118.)**



P.O. Box 997571  
Sacramento, CA 95899  
800-232-4238



**30 Hours**  
Regular Price \$183

#97543 Child Abuse Identification and Reporting: The Pennsylvania Requirement (3 contact hours).....	1
#38130 The B Vitamins (2 contact hours) .....	23
#94820 Chronic Cough in Adults (10 contact hours).....	33
#38910 Pathophysiology: The Hepatobiliary System (15 contact hours) .....	71
Course Availability List .....	116–118
Customer Information .....	119
Evaluation .....	120

### Special Offer price of \$48.95 valid through December 31, 2025

After December 31, 2025, price increases to \$63



#### LEARN

Read the enclosed course(s). Self-assessment questions and study guides create a link between the learning objectives and the supporting text.



#### CLICK

Go to [NetCE.com/PAAPRN25](https://NetCE.com/PAAPRN25). Enter your Quick Code and Customer ID (found on the back of your booklet), or complete the enclosed forms located on pages 119–120.



#### DONE

Receive certificates of completion:

FAST  
By Mail

**FASTEST!**  
Online

Print from your  
NetCE transcript.

#### Advanced Practice Nurses,

Need more Advanced Pharmacology hours?

**Our Advanced Practice special offers are designed just for you.**

You can also create your own **Special Offer** with **Design a Deal**.

Choose from our entire library of courses to create your own Special Offer. Your price is based on the number of hours you select.

**Starting at only \$52!**

(See inside back cover for details.)

#### Nurses,

Need more hours?

**Get One Year of All Access  
Online CE Starting at Only \$85.**

[NetCE.com/AllAccessNurse](https://NetCE.com/AllAccessNurse)

(See inside back cover for details.)

CONTINUING EDUCATION  
FOR PENNSYLVANIA NURSES  
2025

Published by NetCE,  
a TRC Healthcare Company  
P.O. Box 997571  
Sacramento, CA 95899  
Tel: 800-232-4238 (within the U.S.)  
916-783-4238 (outside the U.S.)  
Email: Info@NetCE.com  
Website: www.NetCE.com

**NETCE**

Sr. Director of Development and Academic Affairs,  
Sarah Campbell  
Director of NetCE, Julie Goodwin  
Chief Information Officer, Kevin Bluck  
Director of Graphic Services, Kathryn Harris  
Director of Operations, Alma Parra

**Division Planners**

Margaret Donohue, PhD  
Alice Yick Flanagan, PhD, MSW  
Margo A. Halm, RN, PhD, ACNS-BC  
John V. Jurica, MD, MPH  
John M. Leonard, MD  
Ronald Runciman, MD  
Shannon E. Smith, MHSC, CST, CSFA  
Mark J. Szarejko, DDS, FAGD

**Featured Contributing Faculty**

Alice Yick Flanagan, PhD, MSW  
Mary Franks, MSN, APRN, FNP-C  
Jane C. Norman, RN, MSN, CNE, PhD  
Mark Rose, BS, MA, LP  
Evangeline Y. Samples, MS, RDN, LD, EdD

Copyright © 2024 NetCE

# Child Abuse Identification and Reporting: The Pennsylvania Requirement

This course is approved by the Pennsylvania Department of Human Services to fulfill the requirement for 2 hours of Child Abuse Recognition and Reporting (Act 31) training for healthcare professionals renewing their license. Provider number CACE000020.

**Audience**

This course is designed for all Pennsylvania physicians, physician assistants, nurses, social workers, counselors, pharmacists, and allied health professionals required to complete child abuse education.

**Course Objective**

The purpose of this course is to enable healthcare professionals in all practice settings to define child abuse and identify the children who are affected by violence. This course describes how a victim can be accurately diagnosed and identifies the community resources available in the state of Pennsylvania for child abuse victims.

**Learning Objectives**

Upon completion of this course, you should be able to:

1. Identify the basis for reporting suspected child abuse, including having “reasonable cause to suspect” a child is a victim of child abuse.
2. List the three key components of child abuse as defined by the PA CPSL.
3. Outline the action(s) a mandated reporter must immediately make if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse, including identification of defining circumstances.
4. Relate the actions that are NOT required to take place in order for a mandated reporter to make a report of suspected child abuse.
5. Describe the concept of good faith and how it relates to a mandated reporter making a report of suspected child abuse.
6. Identify circumstances under which mandated reporters are required to make a report if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse.

**Faculty**

**Alice Yick Flanagan, PhD, MSW**, received her Master’s in Social Work from Columbia University, School of Social Work. She has clinical experience in mental health in correctional settings, psychiatric hospitals, and community health centers. In 1997, she received her PhD from UCLA, School of Public Policy and Social Research. Dr. Yick Flanagan completed a year-long post-doctoral fellowship at Hunter College, School of Social Work in 1999. In that year she taught the course Research Methods and Violence Against Women to Masters degree students, as well

as conducting qualitative research studies on death and dying in Chinese American families. (A complete biography appears at the end of this course.)

### Faculty Disclosure

Contributing faculty, Alice Yick Flanagan, PhD, MSW, has disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

### Division Planners

Mary Franks, MSN, APRN, FNP-C

### Senior Director of Development and Academic Affairs

Sarah Campbell

### Division Planners/Director Disclosure

The division planners and director have disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

### Accreditations & Approvals



In support of improving patient care, NetCE is jointly accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), the Accreditation Council for Pharmacy Education (ACPE), and the American

Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC), to provide continuing education for the healthcare team.

### Designations of Credit

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 3 ANCC contact hours.



This activity was planned by and for the healthcare team, and learners will receive 3 Interprofessional Continuing Education (IPCE) credits for learning and change.

AACN Synergy CERP Category B.

### Individual State Nursing Approvals

In addition to states that accept ANCC, NetCE is approved as a provider of continuing education in nursing by: Alabama, Provider #ABNP0353 (valid through 07/29/2025); Arkansas, Provider #50-2405; California, BRN Provider #CEP9784; California, LVN Provider #V10662; California, PT Provider #V10842; District of Columbia, Provider #50-2405; Florida, Provider #50-2405; Georgia, Provider #50-2405; Kentucky, Provider #7-0054 (valid through 12/31/2025); South Carolina, Provider #50-2405; West Virginia, RN and APRN Provider #50-2405.

### Special Approvals

This course is approved by the Pennsylvania Department of Human Services to fulfill the requirement for 3 hours of Child Abuse Recognition and Reporting (Act 31) training for healthcare professionals applying for licensure. Provider number CACE000020.

This course is approved by the Pennsylvania Department of Human Services to fulfill the requirement for 2 hours of Child Abuse Recognition and Reporting (Act 31) training for healthcare professionals renewing their license. Provider number CACE000020.

### About the Sponsor

The purpose of NetCE is to provide challenging curricula to assist healthcare professionals to raise their levels of expertise while fulfilling their continuing education requirements, thereby improving the quality of healthcare.

Our contributing faculty members have taken care to ensure that the information and recommendations are accurate and compatible with the standards generally accepted at the time of publication. The publisher disclaims any liability, loss or damage incurred as a consequence, directly or indirectly, of the use and application of any of the contents. Participants are cautioned about the potential risk of using limited knowledge when integrating new techniques into practice.

### Disclosure Statement

It is the policy of NetCE not to accept commercial support. Furthermore, commercial interests are prohibited from distributing or providing access to this activity to learners.

### How to Receive Credit

- Read the following course.
- Complete the Self-Assessment Questions at the end of the course. (**No test required.**)
- Complete the Evaluation.
- Return your Customer Information/Evaluation and payment to NetCE by mail, or complete online at [www.NetCE.com/PA25](http://www.NetCE.com/PA25).
- A full Works Cited list is available online at [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com).

---

## CHILD WELFARE IN PENNSYLVANIA

---

Pennsylvania was also the first state to take a noncriminal view of child abuse [22; 26]. In 1975, the Pennsylvania Child Protective Services Law (CPSL) (23 Pa.C.S. Chapter 63, Child Protective Services) was enacted, which established a child abuse hotline and a statewide central registry in Pennsylvania in order to encourage the reporting of child abuse [26]. The purpose of the Law is to protect children from abuse, allow the opportunity for healthy growth and development, and preserve and stabilize the family whenever possible. It does not restrict the generally recognized existing rights of parents to use reasonable supervision and control when raising their children.

The child welfare system in Pennsylvania is supervised by the state but administered by the different local counties [27]. This means that there are a total of 67 county agencies that administer the child welfare and juvenile justice services [27]. The State of Pennsylvania delineates two functions for the local agencies: child protective services (CPS) and general protective services (GPS). Recent amendments to the PA CPSL relevant to child abuse recognition and reporting include Act 115 of 2016 (relating to human trafficking), Act 54 of 2018 (relating to notification of substance affected infants by healthcare providers and plan of safe care), and Act 88 of 2019 (relating to penalties for failure to report or refer).

In 2016, SB1311 (Act 115) was signed and went into effect. This Act provides for additional grounds for involuntary termination of parental rights, provides for an additional grounds for aggravated circumstances, allows for the release of information in confidential reports to law enforcement when investigating cases of severe forms of trafficking in persons of sex trafficking, and adds a category of child abuse to include human trafficking. In 2017, Governor Tom Wolf approved Act 68 (also known as the Newborn Protection Act) to increase the number of locations for parents to give up their newborn without criminal liability [6]. In 2018, Act 29 was signed and expanded the definition of child abuse in Pennsylvania to include leaving a child unsupervised with a sexual predator [5]. That same year, Act 54 was signed and required mandatory notification when a medical provider has determined that a child (younger than 1 year of age) was born affected by substance use or withdrawal symptoms resulting from prenatal drug or alcohol exposure. This Act also mandates the development of “interagency protocols” to support local multidisciplinary teams to identify, assess, and develop a plan of safe care for infants born affected by substance use or withdrawal symptoms. In 2019, Act 88, relating to penalties for failure to report or refer, was enacted.

### CHILD PROTECTIVE SERVICES

The Pennsylvania child welfare system is state-supervised and county-administered. County children-and-youth agencies (CCYAs) have two main functions: Child Protective Services (CPS) and General Protective Services (GPS). The first is CPS,

which consists of services and activities provided by DHS and each county agency for child abuse cases. Cases identified as CPS require an investigation because the alleged act or failure to act meets the definition of child abuse. The PA CPSL’s definition of child abuse recognizes 10 separate categories of child abuse. Examples of CPS cases include:

- Causing bodily injury to a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Fabricating, feigning or intentionally exaggerating or inducing a medical symptom or disease which results in a potentially harmful medical evaluation or treatment to the child through any recent act
- Causing or substantially contributing to serious mental injury to a child through any act or failure to act or a series of such acts or failures to act
- Causing sexual abuse or exploitation of a child through any act or failure to act
- Creating a reasonable likelihood of bodily injury to a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Creating a likelihood of sexual abuse or exploitation of a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Causing serious physical neglect of a child
- Engaging in a specific recent “per se” act
- Causing the death of the child through any act or failure to act
- Engaging a child in a severe form of trafficking in persons or sex trafficking

### GENERAL PROTECTIVE SERVICES

GPS is involved in non-abuse cases or acts that involve non-serious injury or neglect [38]. The primary purpose of GPS is to protect the rights and welfare of children, so they have an opportunity for healthy growth and development [38]. It includes services and activities provided by each county agency for cases requiring protective services, as defined by DHS in regulations. GPS cases require an assessment for services and supports. In these cases, the alleged act or failure to act may not meet the definition of child abuse but is still detrimental to a child. Examples of GPS cases: services are provided to prevent the potential for harm to a child who meets one of the following conditions:

- Is without proper parental care or control, subsistence, education as required by law, or other care or control necessary for their physical, mental, or emotional health, or morals
- Has been placed for care or adoption in violation of law
- Has been abandoned by their parents, guardian, or other custodian
- Is without a parent, guardian, or legal custodian
- Is habitually and without justification truant from school while subject to compulsory school attendance

- Has committed a specific act of habitual disobedience of the reasonable and lawful commands of their parent, guardian, or other custodian and who is ungovernable and found to be in need of care, treatment, or supervision
- Is younger than 10 years of age and has committed a delinquent act
- Has been formerly adjudicated dependent under section 6341 of the Juvenile Act (relating to adjudication) and is under the jurisdiction of the court, subject to its conditions or placements, and who commits an act that is defined as ungovernable
- Has been referred under section 6323 of the Juvenile Act (relating to informal adjustment) and who commits an act that is defined as ungovernable
- Causing a child to be present at a location while a violation of 18 Pa.C.S. § 7508.2 relating to the operation of methamphetamine laboratory is occurring, provided that the violation is being investigated by law enforcement
- Leaving a child unsupervised with an individual, other than the child's parent, who the actor knows or reasonably should have known
  - a) is required to register as a Tier II or Tier III sexual offender (under 42 Pa.C.S. Ch. 97 Subch. H relating to registration of sexual offenders), where the victim of the sexual offense was younger than 18 years of age when the crime was committed;
  - b) has been determined to be a sexually violent predator (under 42 Pa.C.S. § 9799.24 relating to assessments, or any of its predecessors);
  - c) has been determined to be a sexually violent delinquent child (as defined in 42 Pa.C.S. § 9799.12 relating to definitions); or
  - d) has been determined to be a sexually violent predator (under 42 Pa.C.S. § 9799.58, relating to assessments) or has to register for life (under 42 Pa.C.S. § 9799.55(b) relating to registration)

---

## DEFINITIONS OF CHILD ABUSE

---

In Pennsylvania, the child abuse law takes a very comprehensive approach to defining of child abuse [26]. According to Pennsylvania law, child abuse shall mean intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly doing any of the following [13]:

- Causing bodily injury to a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Fabricating, feigning, or intentionally exaggerating or inducing a medical symptom or disease that results in a potentially harmful medical evaluation or treatment to the child through any recent act
- Causing or substantially contributing to serious mental injury to a child through any act or failure to act or a series of such acts or failures to act
- Causing sexual abuse or exploitation of a child through any act or failure to act
- Creating a reasonable likelihood of bodily injury to a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Creating a likelihood of sexual abuse or exploitation of a child through any recent act or failure to act
- Causing serious physical neglect of a child
- Engaging in any of the following specific recent "per se" acts:
  - Kicking, biting, throwing, burning, stabbing, or cutting a child in a manner that endangers the child
  - Unreasonably restraining or confining a child, based on consideration of the method, location, or duration of the restraint or confinement
  - Forcefully shaking a child younger than 1 year of age
  - Forcefully slapping or otherwise striking a child younger than 1 year of age
  - Interfering with the breathing of a child
- Causing the death of the child through any act or failure to act
- Engaging a child in a severe form of trafficking in persons or sex trafficking, as those terms are defined under section 103 of the Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000

## KEY COMPONENTS OF CHILD ABUSE

- Child: An individual younger than 18 years of age
- Act or failure to act; Recent act; Recent act or failure to act; or A series of acts or failures to act
  - Act: Something that is done to harm or cause potential harm to a child
  - Failure to act: Something that is NOT done to prevent harm or potential harm to a child
  - Recent act: Any act committed within two (2) years of the date of the report to DHS or county agency
  - Recent act or failure to act: Any act or failure to act committed within two (2) years of the date of the report to DHS or county agency
- Intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly
  - Intentionally: Done with the direct purpose of causing the type of harm that resulted
  - Knowingly: Awareness that harm is practically certain to result
  - Recklessly: Conscious disregard of substantial and unjustifiable risk

## EXCLUSIONS

In addition, the CPSL explicitly excludes specific acts and injuries from the definition of child abuse:

- Restatement of culpability: Conduct that causes injury or harm to a child or creates a risk of injury or harm to a child shall not be considered child abuse if there is no evidence that the person acted intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly when causing the injury or harm to the child or creating a risk of injury or harm to the child.
- Child abuse exclusions: The term child abuse does not include any conduct for which an exclusion is provided in § 6304 of the PA CPSL (relating to exclusions from child abuse).

Exclusions to the definition of child abuse (23 Pa.C.S. § 6304):

- Environmental factors: No child shall be deemed to be physically or mentally abused based on injuries that result solely from environmental factors, such as inadequate housing, furnishings, income, clothing, and medical care, that are beyond the control of the parent or person responsible for the child's welfare with whom the child resides. This shall not apply to any child-care service as defined under section 6303(a) of the PA CPSL (excluding an adoptive parent).
- Practice of religious beliefs: If, upon investigation, the county agency determines that a child has not been provided needed medical or surgical care because of sincerely held religious beliefs of the child's parents or relative within the third degree of consanguinity and with whom the child resides, which beliefs are consistent with those of a bona fide religion, the child shall not be deemed to be physically or mentally abused. In such cases the following shall apply:
  - The county agency shall closely monitor the child and the child's family and shall seek court-ordered medical intervention when the lack of medical or surgical care threatens the child's life or long-term health.
  - All correspondence with a subject of the report and the records of the department and the county agency shall not reference child abuse and shall acknowledge the religious basis for the child's condition.
  - The family shall be referred for general protective services, if appropriate.
  - This exclusion shall not apply if the failure to provide needed medical or surgical care causes the death of the child.
  - This exclusion shall not apply to any childcare service as defined under section 6303(a) of the PA CPSL (excluding an adoptive parent).

- Use of force for supervision, control, and safety purposes: Subject to subsection (d) (relating to the rights of parents), the use of reasonable force on or against a child by the child's own parent or person responsible for the child's welfare shall not be considered child abuse if any of the following conditions apply:
  - The use of reasonable force constitutes incidental, minor, or reasonable physical contact with the child or other actions that are designed to maintain order and control.
  - The use of reasonable force is necessary to quell a disturbance or remove the child from the scene of a disturbance that threatens physical injury to persons or damage to property; to prevent the child from self-inflicted physical harm; for self-defense or the defense of another individual; or to obtain possession of weapons or other dangerous objects or controlled substances or paraphernalia that are on the child or within the control of the child.
- Rights of parents: Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to restrict the generally recognized existing rights of parents to use reasonable force on or against their children for the purposes of supervision, control, and discipline of their children. Such reasonable force shall not constitute child abuse.
- Participation in events that involve physical contact with child: An individual participating in a practice or competition in an interscholastic sport, physical education, recreational activity, or extracurricular activity that involves physical contact with a child does not, in itself, constitute contact that is subject to the reporting requirements of the PA CPSL.
- Defensive force: Reasonable force for self-defense or the defense of another individual shall not be considered child abuse.
  - Reasonable force for self-defense or the defense of another individual (consistent with the provisions of 18 Pa.C.S. § 505, relating to use of force in self-protection, and § 506 (relating to use of force for the protection of other persons) shall not be considered child abuse.
- Child-on-child contact:
  - Harm or injury to a child that results from the act of another child shall not constitute child abuse unless the child who caused the harm or injury is a perpetrator.
  - Notwithstanding paragraph (1) above, the following shall apply:
    - Acts constituting any of the following crimes against a child shall be subject to the reporting requirements of the PA CPSL:
      - Rape (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3121, relating to rape)

- Involuntary deviate sexual intercourse (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3123, relating to involuntary deviate sexual intercourse)
  - Sexual assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3124.1, relating to sexual assault)
  - Aggravated indecent assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3125, relating to aggravated indecent assault)
  - Indecent assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3126, relating to indecent assault), and indecent exposure (as defined in 18 Pa. C.S. § 3127, relating to indecent exposure)
- No child shall be deemed to be a perpetrator of child abuse based solely on physical or mental injuries caused to another child in the course of a dispute, fight, or scuffle entered into by mutual consent.
  - A law enforcement official who receives a report of suspected child abuse is not required to make a report to the department if the person allegedly responsible for the child abuse is a nonperpetrator child.

Nothing in the CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to consider the exclusions from child abuse before making a report of suspected child abuse; the exclusions from child abuse are considered/determined by DHS or the investigating agency after receipt of a referral/report.

### PERPETRATOR

For the purposes of this course, a perpetrator is defined as an individual who has committed child abuse as defined under section 6303(b.1) of the Child Protective Services Law. The term includes only [2; 13]:

- A parent of the child
- A spouse or former spouse of the child's parent
- A paramour or former paramour of the child's parent
- A person 14 years of age or older responsible for the child's welfare or having direct contact with children as an employee of childcare services, a school, or through a program, activity, or service
- An individual 14 years of age or older who resides in the same home as the child
- An individual 18 years of age or older who does not reside in the same home as the child but is related within the third degree of consanguinity or affinity by birth or adoption to the child
- An individual 18 years of age or older who engages a child in severe forms of trafficking in persons or sex trafficking, as those terms are defined under section 103 of the Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000

In a significant revision to the definition of perpetrator, school personnel and other childcare providers are considered "individuals responsible for the child's welfare" and may be perpetrators of child abuse; there is no longer a separate definition for student abuse [2]. As such, a perpetrator may be any such person who has direct or regular contact with a child through any program, activity, or services sponsored by a school, for-profit organization, or religious or other not-for-profit organization.

In addition, only the following may be considered a perpetrator for failing to act [2; 13]:

- A parent of the child
- A spouse or former spouse of the child's parent
- A paramour or former paramour of the child's parent
- A person 18 years of age or older and responsible for the child's welfare or who resides in the same home as the child

Nothing under Pennsylvania law requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.

### FORMS OF CHILD ABUSE

There are several acts that may be considered abusive, and knowledge of what constitutes abuse is vital for healthcare providers and other mandated reporters. In this section, specific behaviors that fall under the category of abuse and neglect will be reviewed.

#### Bodily Injury

Bodily injury can range from minor bruises and lacerations to severe neurologic trauma and death. Bodily injury is one of the most easily identifiable forms of abuse and the type most commonly seen by healthcare professionals [34].

#### Definitions (23 Pa.C.S. § 6303)

The following words and phrases, when used in the PA CPSL, shall have the meanings given to them in this section unless the context clearly indicates otherwise:

- Bodily injury: Impairment of physical condition or substantial pain
  - Impairment: If, due to the injury, the child's ability to function is reduced temporarily or permanently in any way
  - Substantial pain: If the child experiences what a reasonable person believes to be substantial pain

Indicators of bodily injury include:

- Fear of going home
- Fear of parent or caregiver
- Extreme apprehensiveness/vigilance
- Pronounced aggression or passivity



- Flinches easily or avoids being touched
- Play includes abusive talk or behavior
- Unexplained injuries
- Unbelievable or inconsistent explanations of injuries
- Injuries inconsistent with a child's age/developmental level
- Unable to recall how injuries occurred or account of injuries is inconsistent with the nature of the injuries
- Multiple bruises in various stages of healing
- Bruises located on face, ears, neck, buttocks, back, chest, thighs, back of legs, and genitalia
- Bruises that resemble objects such as a hand, fist, belt buckle, or rope
- Burns

Fractures that result from abuse might be found on the child's skull, ribs, nose, or any facial structure. These may be multiple or spiral fractures at various stages of healing. When examining patients, note bruises on the abdominal wall, any intestinal perforation, ruptured liver or spleen, and blood vessel, kidney, bladder, or pancreatic injury, especially if accounts for the cause do not make sense. Look for signs of abrasions on the child's wrists, ankles, neck, or torso. Lacerations might also appear on the child's lips, ears, eyes, mouth, or genitalia. If violent shaking or trauma occurred, the child might experience a subdural hematoma [9; 34].

### Sexual Abuse/Exploitation

#### Definitions (23 Pa.C.S. § 6303)

Sexual abuse or exploitation includes any of the following [45]:

- The employment, use, persuasion, inducement, enticement, or coercion of a child to engage in or assist another individual to engage in sexually explicit conduct, which includes, but is not limited to, the following:
  - Looking at the sexual or other intimate parts of a child or another individual for the purpose of arousing or gratifying sexual desire in any individual
  - Participating in sexually explicit conversation either in person, by telephone, by computer, or by a computer-aided device for the purpose of sexual stimulation or gratification of any individual
  - Actual or simulated sexual activity or nudity for the purpose of sexual stimulation or gratification of any individual
  - Actual or simulated sexual activity for the purpose of producing visual depiction, including photographing, videotaping, computer depicting, or filming

The above does not include consensual activities between a child who is 14 years of age or older and another person who is 14 years of age or older and whose age is within 4 years of the child's age.

- Any of the following when committed against a child:
  - Rape (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3121, relating to rape)
  - Statutory sexual assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3122.1, relating to statutory sexual assault)
  - Involuntary deviate sexual intercourse (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3123, relating to involuntary deviate sexual intercourse)
  - Sexual assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3124.1, relating to sexual assault)
  - Institutional sexual assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3124.2, relating to institutional sexual assault)
  - Aggravated indecent assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3125, relating to aggravated indecent assault)
  - Indecent assault (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3126, relating to indecent assault)
  - Indecent exposure (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 3127, relating to indecent exposure)
  - Incest (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 4302, relating to incest)
  - Prostitution (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 5902, relating to prostitution and related offenses)
  - Sexual abuse (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 6312, relating to sexual abuse of children)
  - Unlawful contact with a minor (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 6318, relating to unlawful contact with minor)
  - Sexual exploitation (as defined in 18 Pa.C.S. § 6320, relating to sexual exploitation of children)

Indicators of sexual abuse or exploitation include:

- Sexually promiscuous behavior
- Developmental age-inappropriate sexual play and/or drawings
- Cruelty to others
- Cruelty to animals
- Fire setting
- Anxious
- Withdrawn
- Sleep disturbances
- Bedwetting
- Pain or irritation in genital/anal area
- Difficulty walking or sitting
- Difficulty urinating

- Pregnancy
- Positive testing for sexually transmitted infection(s) (e.g., HIV)
- Excessive or injurious masturbation

### Serious Physical Neglect

#### Definitions (23 Pa.C.S. § 6303)

Pennsylvania law defines serious physical neglect of a child as any of the following when committed by a perpetrator that endangers a child's life or health, threatens a child's well-being, causes bodily injury, or impairs a child's health, development, or functioning:

- A repeated, prolonged, or egregious failure to supervise a child in a manner that is appropriate considering the child's developmental age and abilities
- The failure to provide a child with adequate essentials of life, including food, shelter, or medical care

Indicators of serious physical neglect include:

- Not registered in school
- Inadequate or inappropriate supervision
- Poor impulse control
- Frequently fatigued
- Parentified behaviors
- Lack of adequate medical and dental care
- Often hungry
- Lack of shelter
- Weight is significantly lower than normal for their age and gender
- Developmental delays
- Persistent (untreated) conditions (e.g., head lice, diaper rash)
- Exposure to hazards (e.g., illegal drugs, rodent/insect infestation, mold)
- Clothing that is dirty, inappropriate for the weather, too small, or too large

### Serious Mental Injury

#### Definitions (23 Pa.C.S. § 6303)

Serious mental injury is a psychological condition, as diagnosed by a physician or licensed psychologist, including the refusal of appropriate treatment, that [1]:

- Renders a child chronically and severely anxious, agitated, depressed, socially withdrawn, psychotic, or in reasonable fear that the child's life or safety is threatened; or
- Seriously interferes with a child's ability to accomplish age-appropriate developmental and social tasks

Indicators of serious mental injury include:

- Expressing feelings of inadequacy
- Fearful of trying new things
- Overly compliant
- Poor peer relationships
- Excessive dependence on adults
- Habit disorders (e.g., sucking, rocking)
- Eating disorders
- Frequent psychosomatic complaints (e.g., nausea, stomachache, headache)
- Bed-wetting
- Self-harm
- Speech disorders

### Severe Forms of Trafficking in Persons

Severe forms of trafficking in persons:

- Sex trafficking in which a commercial sex act is induced by force, fraud, or coercion or in which the person induced to perform such act has not attained 18 years of age; or
  - Sex trafficking: the recruitment, harboring, transportation, provision, obtaining, patronizing, or soliciting of a person for the purpose of a commercial sex act
    - Commercial sex act: Any sex act on account of which anything of value is given to or received by any person
- The recruitment, harboring, transportation, provision, or obtaining of a person for labor or services, through the use of force, fraud, or coercion, for the purpose of subjection to involuntary servitude, peonage, debt bondage, or slavery. Examples include:
  - Peonage: Paying off debt through work
  - Debt bondage: Debt slavery, bonded labor, or services for a debt or other obligation
  - Slavery: A condition compared to that of a slave in respect of exhausting labor or restricted freedom

Labor trafficking is labor obtained by use of threat of serious harm, physical restraint, or abuse of legal process. Examples include:

- Being forced to work for little or no pay (frequently in factories and farms)
- Domestic servitude, defined as providing services within a household for 10 to 16 hours per day, such as, but not limited to, childcare, cooking, cleaning, yard work, and gardening

### **Victim Identification/Warning Signs (Human Trafficking [Act 115 of 2016])**

Warning signs specifically associated with victims of child trafficking and/or exploitation include (but are not limited to):

- A youth that has been verified to be younger than 18 years of age and is in any way involved in the commercial sex industry or has a record of prior arrest for prostitution or related charges
- An explicitly sexual online profile
- Excessive frequenting of Internet chat rooms or classified sites
- Depicting elements of sexual exploitation in drawing, poetry, or other modes of creative expression
- Frequent or multiple sexually transmitted infections or pregnancies
- Is found in a hotel, street track, truck stop, or strip club
- Lies about or has no identification or knowledge of personal data, such as but not limited to: age, name, and/or date of birth
- Wearing clothing that is dirty, sexually inappropriate, inappropriate for the weather, or too large or too small (often dresses or skirts that are provocative in nature)
- Wearing new clothes of any style, getting hair and/or nails done with no financial means
- Having multiple cell phones or very expensive items that they have no way of purchasing on their own
- Having unaddressed medical issues or goes to the ER or clinic alone or with an unrelated adult
- Being secretive about whereabouts
- Having late nights or unusual hours
- Having a tattoo that s/he is reluctant to explain
- Being in a controlling or dominating relationship
- Lack of insurance or control of own finances
- Exhibiting hypervigilance or paranoid behaviors
- Expressing interest in or being in relationships with adults or much older men or women
- Avoiding answering questions and letting someone else speak for them
- Having significant change in behavior, including increased social media and new associates or friends at school
- Having unexplained injuries and/or unbelievable or inconsistent explanations of injuries
- Having multiple bruises or cuts in various stages of healing
- Using specific terms, such as “trick,” “the life,” or “the game”

With this in mind, it is important not to stigmatize children based on their gender expression and clothing choices.

### **At-Risk Youth Populations (Human Trafficking [Act 115 of 2016])**

At-risk youth populations include, but are not limited to, youth [7]:

- In the foster care system
- Who identify as LGBTQIA+
- Who are homeless or runaway
- With disabilities
- With mental health or substance abuse disorders
- With a history of sexual abuse
- With a history of being involved in the welfare system
- Who identify as native or aboriginal
- With family dysfunction

---

## **RECOGNIZING WARNING SIGNS**

---

It is crucial that practitioners become familiar with the indications of child abuse and neglect. These factors do not necessarily conclusively indicate the presence of abuse or neglect; rather, they are clues that require further interpretation and clinical investigation. Some parental risk indicators include [16]:

- Recounting of events that do not conform either with the physical findings or the child’s physical and/or developmental capabilities
- Inappropriate delay in bringing the child to a health facility
- Unwillingness to provide information or the information provided is vague
- History of family violence in the home
- Parental misuse of substances and/or alcohol
- Minimal knowledge or concern about the child’s development and care
- Environmental stressors, such as poverty, single parenthood, unemployment, or chronic illness in the family
- Unwanted pregnancy
- Early adolescent parent
- Expression that the parent(s) wanted a baby in order to feel loved
- Unrealistic expectations of the child
- Use of excessive physical punishment
- Healthcare service “shopping”
- History of parent “losing control” or “hitting too hard”

Child risk indicators include [16]:

- Multiple school absences
- Learning or developmental disabilities
- History of multiple, unexplained illnesses, hospitalizations, or accidents

- Poor general appearance (e.g., fearful, poor hygiene, malnourished appearance, inappropriate clothing for weather conditions)
- Stress-related symptoms, such as headaches or stomachaches
- Frozen watchfulness
- Mental illness or symptoms, such as psychosis, depression, anxiety, eating disorders, or panic attacks
- Regression to wetting and soiling
- Sexually explicit play
- Excessive or out-of-the-ordinary clinging behavior
- Difficulties with concentration
- Disruptions in sleep patterns and/or nightmares

Some of the types of behaviors and symptoms discussed in the definitions of physical, sexual, and serious mental injury are also warning signs. For example, any of the injuries that may result from bodily injury, such as a child presenting with bruises in the shape of electric cords or belt buckles, should be considered risk factors for abuse.

---

## CONSEQUENCES OF CHILD ABUSE

---

The consequences of child abuse and neglect vary from child to child, and these differences continue as victims grow older. Several factors will mediate the outcomes, including the [17]:

- Severity, intensity, frequency, duration, and nature of the abuse and/or neglect
- Age or developmental stage of the child when the abuse occurred
- Relationship between the victim and the perpetrator
- Support from family members and friends
- Level of acknowledgment of the abuse by the perpetrator
- Quality of family functioning

In examining some of the effects of bodily injury, it is helpful to frame the consequences along a lifespan perspective [3]. During infancy, bodily injury can cause neurologic impairments. Most cases of infant head trauma are the result of child abuse [19]. Neurologic damage may also affect future cognitive, behavioral, and developmental outcomes. Some studies have noted that, in early childhood, physically abused children show less secure attachments to their caretakers compared to their non-abused counterparts [20].

By middle to late childhood, the consequences are more notable. Studies have shown significant intellectual and linguistic deficits in physically abused children [3]. Other environmental conditions, such as poverty, may also compound this effect. In addition, a number of affective and behavioral problems have been reported among child abuse victims, including anxiety,

depression, low self-esteem, excessive aggressive behaviors, conduct disorders, delinquency, hyperactivity, and social detachment [3].

Surprisingly, there has been little research on the effects of childhood bodily injury on adolescents [3]. However, differences have been noted in parents who abuse their children during adolescence rather than preadolescence. It appears that lower socioeconomic status plays a lesser role in adolescent abuse as compared with abuse during preadolescence [21]. In addition, parents who abuse their children during adolescence are less likely to have been abused as children themselves compared with those parents who abused their children during preadolescence [21]. It is believed that the psychosocial effects of bodily injury manifest similarly in late childhood and adolescence.

Research findings regarding the effects of childhood abuse on adult survivors indicate an increased risk for major psychiatric disorders, including depression, post-traumatic stress disorder, and substance abuse [36]. Some adult survivors function well socially and in terms of mental and physical health, even developing increased resilience as a result of their experiences, while others exhibit depression, anxiety, post-traumatic stress, substance abuse, criminal behavior, violent behavior, and poor interpersonal relationships [3; 17; 43]. A meta-analysis found that adult survivors of child abuse were more likely to experience depression than non-abused counterparts, with the rates varying according to the type of abuse sustained (1.5-fold increase for physical child abuse, 2.11-fold increase for neglect, and 3-fold increase for serious mental injury) [24]. Similar results were found in a longitudinal study that compared a child welfare cohort to a group with no child welfare involvement. The child welfare group was twice as likely to experience moderate-to-severe depression and generalized anxiety compared with the control group [25]. There is some evidence that vulnerability to long-term effects of maltreatment in childhood may be at least partially genetically mediated [18].

Although not all adult survivors of sexual abuse experience long-term psychological consequences, it is estimated that 20% to 50% of all adult survivors have identifiable adverse mental health outcomes [23]. Possible psychological outcomes include [10]:

- Affective symptoms: Numbing, post-traumatic stress disorder, anxiety, depression, obsessions and compulsions, somatization
- Interpersonal problems: Difficulties trusting others, social isolation, feelings of inadequacy, sexual difficulties (e.g., difficulties experiencing arousal and orgasm), avoidance of sex
- Distorted self-perceptions: Poor self-esteem, self-loathing, self-criticism, guilt, shame
- Behavioral problems: Risk of suicide, substance abuse, self-mutilation, violence
- Increased risk-taking behaviors: Abuse of substances, cigarette smoking, sexual risk-taking

Adult male survivors of child sexual abuse are three times as likely to perpetrate domestic violence as non-victims. In addition, female survivors of child sexual abuse are more vulnerable to bulimia, being a victim of domestic violence, and alcohol use disorder [28].

In more recent years, research has focused on the impact of adverse childhood experiences (ACEs) in general. ACEs are defined as potentially traumatic experiences that affect an individual during childhood (before 18 years of age) and increase the risk for future health and mental health problems (including increased engagement in risky behaviors) as adults [42]. Abuse and neglect during childhood are clear ACEs, but other examples include witnessing family or community violence; experiencing a family member attempting or completing suicide; parental divorce; parental or guardian substance abuse; and parental incarceration [42]. Adults who experienced ACEs are at increased risk for chronic illness, impaired health, violence, arrest, and substance use disorder [15; 28].

---

## REPORTING SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE

---

Pennsylvania has a delineated process in place to facilitate the reporting of suspected child abuse. In addition, in 2014, Governor Corbett signed four new bills intended to streamline and clarify the child abuse reporting process in Pennsylvania. These bills were spurred by the Sandusky child sexual abuse case.

In addition to the reporting guidelines and criteria outlined in the following section, it is also important to refer to your employer's internal policies related to reporting suspected child abuse.

### ESTABLISHMENT OF STATEWIDE TOLL-FREE TELEPHONE NUMBER (23 PA.C.S. § 6332)

The statewide toll-free telephone number is available for all persons, whether mandated by law or not, to use to report cases of suspected child abuse or children allegedly in need of GPS.

### PERSONS ENCOURAGED TO REPORT SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE (23 PA.C.S. § 6312)

There are two general categories of child abuse reporters: mandated reporters and persons encouraged to report suspected child abuse. Persons encouraged to report suspected child abuse are individuals who report an incident of suspected child abuse. These persons are not required to act or intervene in cases of suspected abuse. Put plainly, persons encouraged to report suspected child abuse can report abuse while mandated reporters must report. However, it is important to note that any person may make an oral/verbal (1-800-932-0313) or written report of suspected child abuse, which may be submitted electronically, or cause a report of suspected child abuse to be made to DHS, county agency, or law enforcement, if that person has reasonable cause to suspect that a child is a victim of child abuse.

### PERSONS REQUIRED TO REPORT SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE (23 PA.C.S. § 6311)

#### a. Mandated Reporters

By law, individuals who come into contact with children on a frequent and consistent basis due to their work are legally required to report any suspected child abuse [39]. The following adults shall make a report of suspected child abuse, subject to subsection (b) (relating to basis to report), if the person has reasonable cause to suspect that a child is a victim of child abuse [39]:

- A person licensed or certified to practice in any health-related field under the jurisdiction of the Department of State
- A medical examiner, coroner, or funeral director
- An employee of a health care facility or provider licensed by the Department of Health who is engaged in the admission, examination, care, or treatment of individuals
- A school employee
- An employee of a child-care service who has direct contact with children in the course of employment
- A clergyman, priest, rabbi, minister, Christian Science practitioner, religious healer, or spiritual leader of any regularly established church or other religious organization
- An individual paid or unpaid, who—on the basis of the individual's role as an integral part of a regularly scheduled program, activity, or service—is a person responsible for the child's welfare or has direct contact with children
- An employee of a social service agency who has direct contact with children in the course of employment
- A peace officer or law enforcement official
- An emergency medical services provider certified by the Department of Health
- An employee of a public library who has direct contact with children in the course of employment
- An independent contractor
- An individual supervised or managed by a person listed above, who has direct contact with children in the course of employment
- An attorney affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, or other entity, including a school or regularly established religious organization that is responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or control of children
- A foster parent

- An adult family member who is a person responsible for the child's welfare and provides services to a child in a family living home, community home for individuals with an intellectual disability, or host home for children that are subject to supervision or licensure by DHS under Articles IX and X of the act of June 13, 1967 (P.L.31, No.21) known as the Human Services Code (formerly the Public Welfare Code)

It has long been debated whether attorneys should be included as mandated reporters. With this new definition, there is a seeming compromise, limiting the mandate to attorneys who are affiliated with an organization that is responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or control of children [37].

#### **b. Basis to Report**

A mandated reporter enumerated in subsection (a) (relating to mandated reporters) shall make a report of suspected child abuse in accordance with section 6313 (relating to reporting procedure) if the mandated reporter has reasonable cause to suspect that a child is a victim of child abuse under any of the following circumstances [32]:

- The mandated reporter comes into contact with the child in the course of employment, occupation, and practice of a profession or through a regularly scheduled program, activity, or service.
- The mandated reporter is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child, or is affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, school, regularly established church or religious organization, or other entity that is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child.
- A person makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter that an identifiable child is the victim of child abuse.
- An individual 14 years of age or older makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter (either within or outside of the reporter's professional role) that the individual has committed child abuse.

Nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires a child to come before the mandated reporter in order to make a report of suspected child abuse. Further, nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires the mandated reporter to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.

#### **c. Staff Members of Institutions, Etc.**

Whenever a person is required to report under subsection (b) (relating to basis to report) in the capacity as a member of the staff of a medical or other public or private institution, school, facility, or agency, that person shall report immediately in accordance with section 6313 (relating to reporting procedure) and shall immediately thereafter notify the person in charge of the institution, school, facility, or agency or the

designated agent of the person in charge [32]. Upon notification, the person in charge or the designated agent, if any, is responsible for facilitating the cooperation of the institution, school, facility, or agency with the investigation of the report. Any intimidation, retaliation, or obstruction in the investigation of the report is subject to the provisions of 18 Pa.C.S. § 4958 (relating to intimidation, retaliation, or obstruction in child abuse cases). The PA CPSL does not require more than one report from any such institution, school, facility, or agency.

Not surprisingly, more than three-quarters (80%) of suspected child abuse reports are made by mandated reporters [27]. More specifically, the majority of child abuse reports come from mandated reporters in public/private social services agencies.

#### **Privileged Communications (23 Pa.C.S. § 6311.1)**

##### **a. General Rule**

Subject to subsection (b) (relating to confidential communications), the privileged communications between a mandated reporter and a patient or client of the mandated reporter shall not:

- Apply to a situation involving child abuse
- Relieve the mandated reporter of the duty to make a report of suspected child abuse

As previously noted, an attorney affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, or other entity, including a school or regularly established religious organization that is responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or control of children is a mandated reporter.

##### **b. Confidential Communications**

The following protections shall apply: confidential communications made to a member of the clergy are protected under 42 Pa.C.S. § 5943 (relating to confidential communications to clergymen); and confidential communications made to an attorney are protected so long as they are within the scope of 42 Pa.C.S. § 5916 (relating to confidential communications to attorney) and § 5928 (relating to confidential communications to attorney), the attorney work product doctrine, or the rules of professional conduct for attorneys [39].

##### **Applicability of Mental Health Procedures Act**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a mandated reporter who makes a report of suspected child abuse or who makes a report of a crime against a child to law enforcement officials shall not be in violation of the act of July 9, 1976 (P.L.817, No.143), known as the Mental Health Procedures Act, by releasing information necessary to complete the report.

#### **REASONABLE CAUSE TO SUSPECT**

Reasonable cause to suspect may be a determination one makes based on training/experience and all known circumstances, to include "who," "what," "when," and "how," observations (e.g., indicators of abuse or "red flags", behavior/demeanor of the child(ren), behavior/demeanor of the adult(s)), as well as famil-

ilarity with the individuals (e.g., family situation and relevant history or similar prior incidents, etc.). Some indicators may be more apparent than others depending on the type of abuse and/or depending on the child’s health, developmental level, and well-being. For example, some indicators may be visible on the child’s body while other indicators may be present in the child’s behaviors.

## REPORTING PROCEDURE

In Pennsylvania, mandated reports of potential child abuse (CPS or GPS cases) are made either in writing (through the online portal) or orally to ChildLine. The ChildLine is available seven days per week, 24 hours per day at 800-932-0313. In 2020, ChildLine answered 163,215 calls, including suspected child abuse cases, referrals for GPS, and inquiries for general information to services [27]. Electronic submission of suspected child abuse reports may be made in lieu of calling ChildLine.

### Report by Mandated Reporter

A mandated reporter shall immediately make an oral/verbal report of suspected child abuse to DHS via the statewide toll-free telephone number under § 6332 (relating to establishment of statewide toll-free telephone number) (1-800-932-0313) or a written report using electronic technologies under § 6305 (relating to electronic reporting) (via the self-service Child Welfare Information Solution (CWIS) Portal, available online at <https://www.compass.state.pa.us/cwis>). A mandated reporter making an oral/verbal report of suspected child abuse to the DHS via the statewide toll-free telephone number shall also make a written report (CY-47), which may be submitted electronically, within 48 hours to DHS or county agency assigned to the case in a manner and format prescribed by DHS. The failure of the mandated reporter to file the written report (CY-47) shall not relieve the county agency from any duty under the PA CPSL, and the county agency shall proceed as though the mandated reporter complied.

### Contents of Report

The written report of suspected child abuse, which may be submitted electronically, shall include all of the following information, if known [12]:

- The names and addresses of the child, the child’s parents, and any other person responsible for the child’s welfare
- Where the suspected abuse occurred
- The age and sex of each subject of the report
- The nature and extent of the suspected child abuse, including any evidence of prior abuse to the child or any sibling of the child
- The name and relationship of each individual responsible for causing the suspected abuse and any evidence of prior abuse by each individual
- Family composition

- The source of the report
- The name, telephone number, and e-mail address of the person making the report
- The actions taken by the person making the report, including those actions taken under § 6314 (relating to photographs, medical tests and x-rays of child subject to report), § 6315 (relating to taking child into protective custody), § 6316 (relating to admission to private and public hospitals), or § 6317 (relating to mandatory reporting and postmortem investigation of deaths)
- Any other information required by federal law or regulation
- Any other information that DHS requires by regulation

According to Pennsylvania law, a person or official required to report cases of suspected child abuse may take or request photographs of the child who is subject to a report and, if clinically indicated, request a radiologic examination and other medical tests on the child [11]. If completed, medical summaries or reports of the photographs, x-rays, and relevant medical tests should be sent along with the written report or within 48 hours after a report is made electronically. Persons who have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse are NOT required to identify the person responsible for the abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.

## Protections

### Confidentiality of Reports (23 Pa.C.S. § 6339)

Except as otherwise provided in subchapter C of the PA CPSL (relating to powers and duties of department) or by the Pennsylvania Rules of Juvenile Court Procedure, reports made pursuant to the PA CPSL—including, but not limited to, report summaries of child abuse and reports made pursuant to § 6313 (relating to reporting procedure) as well as any other information obtained, reports written, or photographs or x-rays taken concerning alleged instances of child abuse in the possession of DHS or a county agency—shall be confidential.

Mandated reporters must identify themselves when reporting [13]. However, the identity of the person making the report is kept confidential, with the exception of being released to law enforcement officials or the district attorney’s office [13]. If a mandated reporter so chooses, he/she can sign a consent form that gives consent to have his/her name released [8].

A specialist at ChildLine will interview the caller to determine what the next step should be. This includes assessing if the report will be forwarded to a county agency for investigation as CPS or GPS; if a report should be forward directly to law enforcement officials; or if the caller will be referred to local services [14].

For both GPS and CPS cases, the appropriate county agency is contacted immediately [35]. The county agency is then responsible for its investigation, completing both a “risk assessment” and a “safety assessment.” In CPS cases, the agency sees and evaluates the child within 24 hours of receiving the

report. The primary goal of the evaluations are to assess the nature and extent of the abuse reported; to evaluate the level of risk or harm if the child were to stay in the current living situation; and to determine action(s) needed to ensure the child's safety [14].

A GPS referral will be assessed for any further needs, and appropriate referrals for services may be made for the child and family. If it is a CPS case, further investigation will be conducted. During the investigation, the agency may take photographs of the child and his/her injuries for the files. All investigations must be completed within 30 days from the date the report is taken at ChildLine [27]. Mandated reporters have a right to know of the findings of the investigation and the services provided to the child and may follow the case [33].

### Electronic Reporting (23 Pa.C.S. § 6305)

#### Confirmation of Reports

A confirmation by DHS of the receipt of a report of suspected child abuse submitted electronically shall relieve the person making the report of making an additional oral/verbal or written report of suspected child abuse, subject to § 6313 (relating to reporting procedure).

### MANDATORY NOTIFICATION OF SUBSTANCE AFFECTED INFANTS BY HEALTH CARE PROVIDERS AND PLAN OF SAFE CARE (ACT 54 OF 2018)

A healthcare provider shall immediately give notice or cause notice to be given to Pennsylvania Department of Human Services if the provider is involved in the delivery or care of a child younger than 1 year of age and the healthcare provider has determined, based on standards of professional practice, the child was born affected by substance use or withdrawal symptoms resulting from prenatal drug exposure; or a fetal alcohol spectrum disorder. Notification to the Pennsylvania Department of Human Services can be made electronically through the Child Welfare Portal or by calling 1-800-932-0313. This notification is for the purpose of assessing a child and the child's family for a Plan of Safe Care and shall not constitute a child abuse report. In this context, healthcare provider or professional is defined as a licensed hospital or healthcare facility or person who is licensed, certified, or otherwise regulated to provide healthcare services under the laws of Pennsylvania, including physicians, podiatrists, optometrists, psychologists, physical therapists, certified nurse practitioners, registered nurses, nurse midwives, physician assistants, chiropractors, dentists, pharmacists, or individuals accredited or certified to provide behavioral health services.

In 2019, the Pennsylvania Department of Health, Pennsylvania Department of Drug and Alcohol Programs, and Pennsylvania Department of Human Services published the Pennsylvania Plan of Safe Care Guidance addressing a framework for responding to the health and substance use disorder treatment needs of infants born affected by substance use disorder and/or withdrawal symptoms and affected family or caregivers [4].

This publication includes definitions and evidence-based screening tools, based on standards of professional practice, to be utilized by healthcare providers to identify a child born affected by substance use or withdrawal symptoms resulting from prenatal drug exposure or a fetal alcohol spectrum disorder. The plan of safe care typically includes [4]:

- A release of information to allow for the collaboration among entities
- Referrals to treatment programs, mobile engagement and peer recovery specialists
- Education on neonatal abstinence syndrome, effects of substance use during pregnancy, and reporting requirements for substance affected infants
- A relapse plan that includes child safety considerations and identified family supports
- Coordination between the obstetrician and the prescribing practitioner(s)
- Development of a birth plan, including pain management options
- Education and guidance on breastfeeding and substance use
- Stigma-reducing practices designed to engage the patient in consistent prenatal care
- Referrals to Family Strengthening, Early Head Start, Family Check Up for Children, Healthy Families America, Nurse-Family Partnership, Parents as Teachers, Family Group Decision Making (FGDM), Women Infant Children (WIC), public assistance, transportation assistance, counseling, housing assistance, domestic violence programs, and/or food banks
- Referral to ChildLine if there are concerns with mother's ability to be a caretaker for other children

After notification of a child born affected by substance use or withdrawal symptoms resulting from prenatal drug exposure or a fetal alcohol spectrum disorder:

- A multidisciplinary team meeting must be held prior to the child's discharge from the healthcare facility.
- The meeting will inform an assessment of the needs of the child and the child's parents and immediate caregivers to determine the most appropriate lead agency for developing, implementing, and monitoring a plan of safe care. The child's parents and immediate caregivers must be engaged to identify the need for access to treatment for any substance use disorder or other physical or behavioral health condition that may impact the safety, early childhood development, and well-being of the child.
- Depending upon the needs of the child and parent(s)/caregiver(s), ongoing involvement of the county agency may not be required.



### **Multidisciplinary Team**

For the purpose of informing the plan of safe care, this team may include public health agencies, maternal and child health agencies, home visitation programs, substance use disorder prevention and treatment providers, mental health providers, public and private children and youth agencies, early intervention and developmental services, courts, local education agencies, managed care organizations and private insurers, and hospitals and medical providers.

### **PROTECTIONS FOR REPORTERS**

Reporters are afforded protections after reporting a suspected incidence of child abuse. Any person or institution who, in good faith, makes a report of child abuse, cooperates with a child abuse investigation, or testifies in a child abuse proceeding is considered immune from civil and criminal liability [44].

#### **Immunity from Liability (23 Pa.C.S. § 6318)**

A person, hospital, institution, school, facility, agency, or agency employee acting in good faith shall have immunity from civil and criminal liability that might otherwise result from any of the following:

- Making a report of suspected child abuse or making a referral for general protective services, regardless of whether the report is required to be made under the PA CPSL
- Cooperating or consulting with an investigation under the PA CPSL, including providing information to a child fatality or near-fatality review team
- Testifying in a proceeding arising out of an instance of suspected child abuse or general protective services
- Engaging in any action authorized under 23 Pa.C.S. § 6314 (relating to photographs, medical tests and x-rays of child subject to report), § 6315 (relating to taking child into protective custody), § 6316 (relating to admission to private and public hospitals), or § 6317 (relating to mandatory reporting and postmortem investigation of deaths)

#### **Departmental and County Agency Immunity**

An official or employee of DHS or county agency who refers a report of suspected child abuse for general protective services to law enforcement authorities or provides services as authorized by the PA CPSL shall have immunity from civil and criminal liability that might otherwise result from the action.

#### **Presumption of Good Faith**

For the purpose of any civil or criminal proceeding, the good faith of a person required to report suspected child abuse and of any person required to make a referral to law enforcement officers under the PA CPSL shall be presumed.

### **Protection from Employment**

#### **Discrimination (23 Pa.C.S. § 6320)**

#### **Basis for Relief**

A person may commence an action for appropriate relief if all of the following apply: the person is required to report suspected child abuse under § 6311 (relating to persons required to report suspected child abuse) or encouraged to report suspected child abuse under § 6312 (relating to persons encouraged to report suspected child abuse); the person acted in good faith in making or causing the report of suspected child abuse to be made; and as a result of making the report of suspected child abuse, the person is discharged from employment or is discriminated against with respect to compensation, hire, tenure, terms, conditions, or privileges of employment.

#### **Applicability**

This section does not apply to an individual making a report of suspected child abuse who is found to be a perpetrator because of the report or to any individual who fails to make a report of suspected child abuse as required under § 6311 (relating to persons required to report suspected child abuse) and is subject to conviction under § 6319 (relating to penalties) for failure to report or to refer.

#### **Release of Information in Confidential**

#### **Reports (23 Pa.C.S. § 6340)**

#### **Protecting Identity**

Except for reports under § 6340(a)(9) and (10) of the PA CPSL and in response to a law enforcement official investigating allegations of false reports under 18 Pa.C.S. § 4906.1 (relating to false reports of child abuse), the release of data by DHS, county, institution, school, facility, or agency or designated agent of the person in charge that would identify the person who made a report of suspected child abuse or who cooperated in a subsequent investigation is prohibited. Law enforcement officials shall treat all reporting sources as confidential informants.

#### **PENALTIES (23 PA.C.S. § 6319)**

#### **Failure to Report or Refer**

A person or official required by the PA CPSL to report a case of suspected child abuse or to make a referral to the appropriate authorities commits an offense if the person or official willfully fails to do so.

An offense under this section is a felony of the third degree if:

- The person or official willfully fails to report;
- The child abuse constitutes a felony of the first degree or higher; and
- The person or official has direct knowledge of the nature of the abuse.

An offense not otherwise specified above is a misdemeanor of the second degree.

A report of suspected child abuse to law enforcement or the appropriate county agency by a mandated reporter, made in lieu of a report to DHS, shall not constitute an offense under this subsection, provided that the report was made in a good faith effort to comply with the requirements of the PA CPSL.

### Multiple Offenses

A person who, at the time of sentencing for an offense under this section, has been convicted of a prior offense under this section commits a felony of the third degree...except that, if the child abuse constitutes a felony of the first degree or higher, the penalty for the second or subsequent offenses is a felony of the second degree.

### Continuing Course of Action

If a person's willful failure to report an individual suspected of child abuse continues while the person knows or has reasonable cause to suspect a child is being subjected to child abuse by the same individual, or while the person knows or has reasonable cause to suspect that the same individual continues to have direct contact with children through the individual's employment, program, activity, or service, the person commits a felony of the third degree...except that, if the child abuse constitutes a felony of the first degree or higher, the person commits a felony of the second degree [2].

### Statute of Limitations

The statute of limitations for an offense under this section shall be either the statute of limitations for the crime committed against the minor child or five years, whichever is greater.

## BARRIERS TO REPORTING

Studies have shown that many professionals who are mandated to report child abuse and neglect are concerned and/or anxious about reporting. Identified barriers to reporting include [29; 30; 31; 40]:

- Professionals may not feel skilled in their knowledge base about child abuse and neglect. In addition, they lack the confidence to identify sexual abuse and serious mental injury.
- Professionals may be frustrated with how little they can do about poverty, unemployment, drug use, and the intergenerational nature of abuse.
- Although professionals understand their legal obligation, they may still feel that they are violating patient confidentiality.
- Many professionals are skeptical about the effectiveness of reporting child abuse cases given the bureaucracy of the child welfare system.
- Practitioners may be concerned that they do not have adequate or sufficient evidence of child abuse.
- Practitioners may have a belief that government entities do not have the right to get involved in matters within the family.

- There may be some confusion and emotional distress in the reporting process.
- Practitioners may fear that reporting will negatively impact the therapeutic relationship.
- Some professionals have concerns that there might be negative repercussions against the child by the perpetrator.
- Some simply underestimate the seriousness and risk of the situation and may make excuses for the parents.

When interviewing children whose first language is not English, it is highly recommended that they be interviewed through the use of an interpreter. It can cause additional stress for children who struggle to find the right words in English, which can result in more feelings of fear, disempowerment, and voicelessness [41].

## AFTER A REPORT OR REFERRAL IS MADE

When a county agency or law enforcement receives a referral/report, the county agency or law enforcement official is to notify DHS after ensuring the immediate safety of the child and any other child(ren) in the child's home. When ChildLine receives a referral/report, ChildLine will immediately evaluate and transmit the information to the appropriate agency for assessment or investigation.

### Referral to County Agency (CPS)

If the suspected child abuse is alleged to have been committed by a perpetrator, ChildLine will transmit the information to the county agency where the suspected child abuse is alleged to have occurred for investigation of the allegation(s).

### Referral to County Agency and Law Enforcement Officials (LEO)

If the suspected child abuse is alleged to have been committed by a perpetrator and the behavior constituting the suspected child abuse may include a violation of a criminal offense, ChildLine will transmit the information to the appropriate law enforcement official in the county where the suspected child abuse is alleged to have occurred for a joint investigation of the allegation(s).

### Referral to Law Enforcement Officials Only (LEO)

If the person suspected of committing child abuse is not a perpetrator but the behavior constituting the suspected child abuse may include a violation of a criminal offense, ChildLine will transmit the information to the appropriate law enforcement official in the county where the suspected child abuse is alleged to have occurred for investigation of the allegation(s).

### Referral to County Agency (GPS)

If the referral/report does not suggest the child is in need of protective services but suggests the child is in need of other services, ChildLine will transmit the information to the appropriate county agency for assessment of the needs of the child.

Investigation of Reports (23 Pa.C.S. § 6368)

**Notice to Mandated Reporter**

If a report was made by a mandated reporter, DHS shall notify the mandated reporter who made the report of suspected child abuse of all of the following within three business days of DHS's receipt of the results of the investigation, including whether the child abuse report is founded, indicated, or unfounded; and any services provided, arranged for, or to be provided by the county agency to protect the child.

---

**CASE SCENARIOS**

---

In the following case scenarios, consider whether mandated reporters have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse and are required to make a report of suspected child abuse.

**CASE 1**

A young boy comes into the community health clinic for a physical exam. The boy's mother hovers and does not seem to want to let her son answer any questions. During the exam, in the process of taking blood, the nurse notices some bruises and lacerations on the boy's arm. Later, bruises in the shape of a belt are observed on the boy's back as well. Upon questioning, the boy will only say that he was "bad."

*Is there reasonable cause to suspect this child is a victim of child abuse? What, if any, indicators of child abuse exist in this case?*

The injuries are consistent with inflicted bodily injuries, indicative of abuse. In this case, the nurse is a mandated reporter and is required by law to make a report to ChildLine.

**CASE 2**

Ms. J, a social worker, notices neighbor children, E (5 years of age) and S (6 years of age), running around their front yard at 8 p.m. The front door of the house is wide open, and Ms. J asks if their mother is home. S states that her mother went out with her girlfriend to a party. Ms. J asks if a babysitter is at the house, and S answers "no" again. This is not the first time neighbors have noticed that the kids are left at home alone. The neighbors report that the mother often comes home late, intoxicated.

*Is there reasonable cause to suspect this child is a victim of child abuse? What, if any, indicators of child abuse exist in this case?*

The young children in this case have been left without supervision, an indicator consistent with serious physical neglect. Ms. J, a mandated reporter, is required to report to ChildLine. More information will be presented about reporting in later sections of this course.

**CASE 3**

A young girl, 2 years of age, is brought to the emergency department by her mother and stepfather for a scalp laceration. The girl is very quiet and appears listless and out of sorts. Her mother reports that she was injured when she fell onto a rock outside, but that the injury occurred when the girl was being watched by the stepfather. The girl undergoes assessment for traumatic brain injury, including assessment of function using the modified Glasgow Coma Score. The toddler is found to have mild impairment (a score of 13), and the follow-up test two hours later indicates normal functioning. The nurse notices that the toddler appears to be afraid of the stepfather, leaning away and crying when he is near her. The stepfather also appears to be easily frustrated with the child, saying that he does not know why she cries so much.

*Is there reasonable cause to suspect this child is a victim of child abuse? What, if any, indicators of child abuse exist in this case?*

Aside from the physical injury, which could be consistent with the reported accident, this patient has some signs of bodily injury (e.g., flinches easily or avoids being touched) that may give a provider reasonable cause to suspect abuse. If the provider caring for this patient has reasonable cause to suspect that the child is a victim of child abuse, they are required to make a report to ChildLine, which would initiate an investigation.

**CASE 4**

A boy, 13 years of age, is undergoing a routine physical exam with his family physician. The physician asks the boy if he is excited to start school in the next few weeks and how his baseball team is doing. The boy becomes quiet and states that he is nervous about an upcoming trip with his baseball team but does not give additional information. When asked directly, the boy says that he is uncomfortable with the new assistant coach, who watches pornography with them during out-of-town tournaments and supplies them with pornographic magazines. However, the boy states that he doesn't think it's a big deal and that "all of the other kids seem to really like it."

*Is there reasonable cause to suspect this child is a victim of child abuse? What, if any, indicators of child abuse exist in this case? What is the reporting procedure in this case?*

In this case, the physician is required to make a report to ChildLine, because indicators are that the situation is consistent with sexual abuse or exploitation.

**CASE 5**

A girl, 6 years of age, visits the school nurse complaining of a stomachache. She is disheveled in appearance, with torn, dirty clothing and unbrushed hair. She reports being hungry, as she did not have dinner the night before or breakfast this morning. She also reports that she has been sleeping on a relative's couch with her mother since they moved out of their apartment last month.

*Is there reasonable cause to suspect this child is a victim of child abuse? What, if any, indicators of child abuse exist in this case?*

The signs in the case indicate poverty, not abuse. Because there is no reasonable cause to suspect child abuse, the nurse is not required to make a report to ChildLine. Instead, the patient and her family should be connected with available services and resources to assist in meeting their immediate needs. The nurse could make a report to ChildLine or the county Children and Youth Agency if the nurse is unable or unsuccessful in connecting the family with needed services.

---

### KEY TAKEAWAYS

---

This course has explored the scope of child abuse and neglect in Pennsylvania as well as the appropriate response to suspected or known cases of child abuse. The following is a summary of key points:

- The basis for reporting suspected child abuse is having “reasonable cause to suspect” a child is a victim of child abuse.
- Nothing in the PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to identify the type of abuse they are reporting when making a report of suspected child abuse.
- The PA CPSL recognizes three key components of child abuse:
  - Child
  - Act or failure to act; recent act; recent act or failure to act; or a series of acts or failures to act
  - Intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly
- A mandated reporter enumerated under section 6311(a) of the PA CPSL must immediately make a report suspected child abuse to ChildLine, Pennsylvania’s 24/7 Child Abuse Hotline and Registry, by calling 1-800-932-0313 or electronically through the Child Welfare Portal, if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse under any of the following circumstances:
  - The mandated reporter comes into contact with the child in the course of employment, occupation, and practice of a profession or through a regularly scheduled program, activity, or service.
  - The mandated reporter is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child, or is affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, school, regularly established church or religious organization, or other entity that is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child.
  - A person makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter that an identifiable child is the victim of child abuse.

- An individual 14 years of age or older makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter that the individual has committed child abuse.
- Nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires a child to come before the mandated reporter in order for the mandated reporter to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- Nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires the mandated reporter to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- Nothing in the PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to consider the exclusions from child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- A mandated reporter is presumed to have acted in good faith when making a report of suspected child abuse.

---

### RESOURCES

---

#### **ChildLine: Pennsylvania Child Abuse Hotline**

1-800-932-0313

<https://www.dhs.pa.gov/keepkidssafe>

#### **Child Welfare Information Gateway**

330 C Street SW

Washington, DC 20201

1-800-394-3366

To report abuse: 1-800-422-4453

<https://www.childwelfare.gov>

#### **Child Welfare League of America**

727 15th Street NW, 12th Floor

Washington, DC 20005

202-688-4200

<https://www.cwla.org>

#### **National Council on Child Abuse and Family Violence**

P.O. Box 5222

Arlington, VA 22205

202-429-6695

<https://www.preventfamilyviolence.org>

#### **Pennsylvania Chapter of Children’s Advocacy Centers and Multidisciplinary Teams**

P.O. Box 3323

Erie, PA 16508

814-431-8151

<https://penncac.org>

#### **Pennsylvania Child Welfare Information Solution**

877-343-0494

<https://www.compass.state.pa.us/cwis>

**Pennsylvania Department of Human Services**

P.O. Box 2675  
Harrisburg, PA 17105  
1-800-692-7462  
<https://www.dhs.pa.gov>

**University of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania**

**Child Welfare Resource Center**  
403 East Winding Hill Road  
Mechanicsburg, PA 17055  
717-795-9048  
<http://www.pacwrc.pitt.edu>

**Pennsylvania Child Protective Services Law**

**Section 6303: Definitions**

<https://www.legis.state.pa.us/WU01/LI/LI/CT/HTM/23/00.063.003.000..HTM>

---

**FACULTY BIOGRAPHY**

---

Alice Yick Flanagan, PhD, MSW, received her Master's in Social Work from Columbia University, School of Social Work. She has clinical experience in mental health in correctional settings, psychiatric hospitals, and community health centers. In 1997, she received her PhD from UCLA, School of Public Policy and Social Research. Dr. Yick Flanagan completed a year-long post-doctoral fellowship at Hunter College, School of Social Work in 1999. In that year she taught the course Research Methods and Violence Against Women to Masters degree students, as well as conducting qualitative research studies on death and dying in Chinese American families.

Previously acting as a faculty member at Capella University and Northcentral University, Dr. Yick Flanagan is currently a contributing faculty member at Walden University, School of Social Work, and a dissertation chair at Grand Canyon University, College of Doctoral Studies, working with Industrial Organizational Psychology doctoral students. She also serves as a consultant/subject matter expert for the New York City Board of Education and publishing companies for online curriculum development, developing practice MCAT questions in the area of psychology and sociology. Her research focus is on the area of culture and mental health in ethnic minority communities.

A full list of all relevant resources and statutes is available online at  
<https://www.NetCE.com/courseoverview.php?courseid=2956>.

Customer Information and Evaluation are located on pages 119–120.

SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

#97543 CHILD ABUSE IDENTIFICATION AND REPORTING: THE PENNSYLVANIA REQUIREMENT

*After reviewing the course, complete the following Self-Assessment Questions. Receive immediate feedback by reviewing the Study Guide provided on page 22. Please record the number of questions you correctly answered on the Evaluation. The Evaluation must be completed in order to receive credit for this course.*

*This 3 contact hour activity must be completed by October 31, 2027.*

1. A mandated reporter must immediately make a report if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse under which of the following circumstances?
  - A) The mandated reporter comes into contact with the child in the course of employment, occupation, and practice of a profession or through a regularly scheduled program, activity, or service.
  - B) A person makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter that an identifiable child is the victim of child abuse.
  - C) An individual 14 years of age or older makes a specific disclosure to the mandated reporter that the individual has committed child abuse.
  - D) Any of the above
2. Which of the following statements regarding mandated reporting is TRUE?
  - A) A mandated reporter is presumed to have acted in good faith when making a report of suspected child abuse.
  - B) Section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires a child to come before the mandated reporter in order for the mandated reporter to make a report of suspected child abuse.
  - C) Section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires the mandated reporter to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
  - D) The PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to consider the exclusions from child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
3. What is the basis for reporting suspected child abuse?
  - A) A “reasonable cause to suspect” a child is a victim of child abuse
  - B) Law enforcement responsibility
  - C) Witnessing any struggle by a child
  - D) Avoidance of potential liability
4. Nothing in the PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to identify the type of abuse they are reporting when making a report of suspected child abuse.
  - A) True
  - B) False
5. What does the PA CPSL recognize as the three key components of child abuse?
  - A) Injury, intention, and isolation
  - B) Child; act or failure to act, recent act, recent act or failure to act, or a series of acts or failures to act; and intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly
  - C) Victim; an investigation that reaches a conclusion of intended injury; and involvement of law enforcement
  - D) Age younger than 10 years; interaction with a known and identified perpetrator; and unintentionally, accidentally, or carelessly
6. If they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse, a mandated reporter must immediately make a report suspected child abuse to
  - A) a supervisor.
  - B) ChildLine, Pennsylvania’s 24/7 Child Abuse Hotline and Registry, electronically through the Child Welfare Portal.
  - C) ChildLine, Pennsylvania’s 24/7 Child Abuse Hotline and Registry, by calling 1-800-932-0313.
  - D) Either B or C

7. A mandated reporter must immediately make a report of suspected child abuse if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse whenever the mandated reporter is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child, or is affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, school, regularly established church or religious organization, or other entity that is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child.
- A) *True*
  - B) *False*
8. Section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires a child to come before the mandated reporter in order for the mandated reporter to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- A) *True*
  - B) *False*
9. Nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires the mandated reporter to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- A) *True*
  - B) *False*
10. The PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to consider the exclusions from child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.
- A) *True*
  - B) *False*

# STUDY GUIDE

## COURSE #97543 CHILD ABUSE IDENTIFICATION & REPORTING: THE PENNSYLVANIA REQUIREMENT

This Study Guide has been included to provide immediate feedback about your achievement for the course learning objectives. The correct answer for the Self-Assessment Questions and their locations within the text are indicated below.

- 1. A mandated reporter must immediately make a report if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse under which of the following circumstances?**  
D) Any of the above (Reporting Suspected Child Abuse; Persons Required to Report Suspected Child Abuse (23 PA.C.S. § 6311); b. Basis to Report)
- 2. Which of the following statements regarding mandated reporting is TRUE?**  
A) A mandated reporter is presumed to have acted in good faith when making a report of suspected child abuse. (Reporting Suspected Child Abuse; Protections for Reporters; Immunity from Liability (23 Pa.C.S. § 6318); Presumption of Good Faith)
- 3. What is the basis for reporting suspected child abuse?**  
A) A “reasonable cause to suspect” a child is a victim of child abuse (Key Takeaways)
- 4. Nothing in the PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to identify the type of abuse they are reporting when making a report of suspected child abuse.**  
A) True (Key Takeaways)
- 5. What does the PA CPSL recognize as the three key components of child abuse?**  
B) Child; act or failure to act, recent act, recent act or failure to act, or a series of acts or failures to act; and intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly (Key Takeaways)
- 6. If they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse, a mandated reporter must immediately make a report suspected child abuse to**  
D) Either B or C (Key Takeaways)
- 7. A mandated reporter must immediately make a report of suspected child abuse if they have reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse whenever the mandated reporter is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child, or is affiliated with an agency, institution, organization, school, regularly established church or religious organization, or other entity that is directly responsible for the care, supervision, guidance, or training of the child.**  
A) True (Key Takeaways)
- 8. Section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires a child to come before the mandated reporter in order for the mandated reporter to make a report of suspected child abuse.**  
B) False (Key Takeaways)
- 9. Nothing in section 6311 of the PA CPSL requires the mandated reporter to identify the person responsible for the child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.**  
A) True (Key Takeaways)
- 10. The PA CPSL requires a person who has reasonable cause to suspect a child is a victim of child abuse to consider the exclusions from child abuse in order to make a report of suspected child abuse.**  
B) False (Key Takeaways)



# The B Vitamins

## **Audience**

This course is designed for nurses and allied health professionals in all practice settings.

## **Course Objective**

The purpose of this course is to provide nurses with information about the importance of B vitamins for human health, so they can identify patients at risk of deficiency and provide nutrition counseling and education about recommended intake.

## **Learning Objectives**

Upon completion of this course, you should be able to:

1. Outline the action, recommended intake, and effects of deficiency of the B vitamin thiamine.
2. Review the sources and potential effects of deficiency of riboflavin and niacin.
3. Describe the action, dietary sources, and potential deficiency issues associated with the other B vitamins.

## **Faculty**

**Evangeline Y. Samples, MS, RDN, LD, EdD**, is a dietitian and writer who has worked for decades teaching patients and students about good nutrition. She earned her Masters of Science degree in Dietetics from Marshall University and earned her Doctor of Education degree from Northcentral University. Ms. Samples has an adjunct professor of nutrition, and has written numerous articles on fitness and nutrition for the lay public. She is currently a clinical dietitian practicing in West Virginia.

## **Faculty Disclosure**

Contributing faculty, Evangeline Y. Samples, MS, RDN, LD, EdD, has disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

## **Division Planner**

Sharon Cannon, RN, EdD, ANEF

## **Senior Director of Development and Academic Affairs**

Sarah Campbell

## **Division Planner/Director Disclosure**

The division planner and director have disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

## **Accreditations & Approvals**



JOINTLY ACCREDITED PROVIDER<sup>®</sup>  
INTERPROFESSIONAL CONTINUING EDUCATION

In support of improving patient care, NetCE is jointly accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), the Accreditation Council for Pharmacy Education (ACPE), and the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC), to provide continuing education for the healthcare team.

## **Designations of Credit**

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 2 ANCC contact hours.

AACN Synergy CERP Category A.

## **Individual State Nursing Approvals**

In addition to states that accept ANCC, NetCE is approved as a provider of continuing education in nursing by: Alabama, Provider #ABNP0353 (valid through 07/29/2025); Arkansas, Provider #50-2405; California, BRN Provider #CEP9784; California, LVN Provider #V10662; California, PT Provider #V10842; District of Columbia, Provider #50-2405; Florida, Provider #50-2405; Georgia, Provider #50-2405; Kentucky, Provider #7-0054 (valid through 12/31/2025); South Carolina, Provider #50-2405; West Virginia, RN and APRN Provider #50-2405.

## **About the Sponsor**

The purpose of NetCE is to provide challenging curricula to assist healthcare professionals to raise their levels of expertise while fulfilling their continuing education requirements, thereby improving the quality of healthcare.

Our contributing faculty members have taken care to ensure that the information and recommendations are accurate and compatible with the standards generally accepted at the time of publication. The publisher disclaims any liability, loss or damage incurred as a consequence, directly or indirectly, of the use and application of any of the contents. Participants are cautioned about the potential risk of using limited knowledge when integrating new techniques into practice.

**Disclosure Statement**

It is the policy of NetCE not to accept commercial support. Furthermore, commercial interests are prohibited from distributing or providing access to this activity to learners.

**How to Receive Credit**

- Read the following course.
- Complete the Self-Assessment Questions at the end of the course. (No test required.)
- Complete the Evaluation.
- Return your Customer Information/Evaluation and payment to NetCE by mail, or complete online at [www.NetCE.com/PA25](http://www.NetCE.com/PA25).
- A full Works Cited list is available online at [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com).

---

**INTRODUCTION**

---

The B vitamins are necessary for numerous metabolic processes. For example, they function as coenzymes in the metabolism of carbohydrates. Because the B vitamins are water-soluble, they are excreted in the urine and are not stored long term in body tissues. Therefore, they need to be replenished frequently through dietary intake and/or supplementation. This course explores the roles of thiamine, niacin, riboflavin, vitamin B6, vitamin B12, and folate in human nutrition, including the functions, daily requirements, food sources, deficiency, and toxicity of these vitamins.

---

**THIAMINE**

---

Thiamine, also called vitamin B1, functions as a coenzyme in the metabolism of carbohydrates and is essential in the metabolism of glucose [1; 2]. Thiamine is a cofactor for a number of enzymes, mostly those located within the mitochondria of cells. This vitamin plays vital roles in energy metabolism and the production of nucleic acids [2].

**ABSORPTION OF THIAMINE**

Thiamine is absorbed in the jejunum by active transport. Only a small percentage of ingested thiamine is absorbed, and excess thiamine is excreted in the urine [1]. The body does not store more than 30 mg of thiamine, and the half-life of thiamine is 9 to 18 days. For these reasons, thiamine must be replenished frequently through the diet [2].

**DIETARY THIAMINE**

Requirements are determined by sex and life stage. Boys and men 14 years of age and older require 1.2 mg thiamine per day, while girls and women 14 years of age and older require 1.1 mg per day. Individuals receiving hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis have increased needs (1.5–2 mg) [1].

The richest sources of naturally occurring thiamine are meat (especially pork), whole grains, yeast, and legumes. Fortified foods are also a good source. To prevent widespread deficiencies, it is recommended that the target population should consume a fortified food daily. This is generally easily achieved, as food staples such as rice or wheat flour are often fortified with thiamine. Mandatory fortification levels range from 1.5–11 mg per kg of wheat flour [3]. There is no known tolerable upper intake level and no known toxicity for thiamine; however, using the lowest effective dose is recommended [1; 3].

## EXCESS THIAMINE

There are limited data on excess thiamine consumption, and there is no established upper limit for thiamine consumption [1].

## THIAMINE DEFICIENCY

Thiamine deficiency has numerous causes. It may be caused by inadequate intake, malabsorption, food-nutrient interactions, and increased excretion resulting from physically demanding occupations or spend large amounts of time training for active sports [1]. Other factors include aging, economic status, eating disorders, gastrointestinal conditions, parenteral nutrition, bariatric surgery, diabetes, and alcohol abuse. Pregnancy, lactation, and increased physical activity increase the need for thiamine [2].

### Foods that Compromise Thiamine Status

Some food processing methods and food components compromise thiamine status in individuals. Industrial food processing depletes the thiamine content of food. Increased consumption of processed foods that contain simple carbohydrates without being supplemented with high levels of thiamine can lead to a phenomenon known as “high-calorie malnutrition.”

As noted, foods that contain tannins can inactivate thiamine in the body, thereby putting an individual at risk for deficiency [2]. Tannins are found in tea, coffee, legumes (e.g., chickpeas, pinto beans), and berries (e.g., strawberries, raspberries) [1; 4]. Foods high in caffeine, theobromine, and theophylline, including coffee, tea and chocolate, can also inactivate thiamine in the body [2]. Thiamine status may also be compromised by betel nuts, ferns, African silkworm larvae, and thiaminase-containing fish [3].

### Thiamine Deficiency Caused by Genetic Disorders

Thiamine deficiency may be caused by genetic disorders or genetic factors. Four known genetic disorders can cause impairment of thiamine metabolism and transport. Carriers of loss-of-function mutations in *SLC19A2* develop a rare condition called thiamine-responsive megaloblastic anemia (TRMA), or Rogers syndrome [5]. The condition is an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by megaloblastic anemia, macrocytosis, diabetes mellitus, and sensorineural deafness. Other features of this disorder include optic atrophy, congenital heart defects, short stature, and epilepsy and stroke during infancy. Symptoms improve after administering high doses of thiamine [2].

Thiamine deficiency can also result from genetic factors with pathogenic gene mutations in key regulators of the thiamine pathway. These key regulators include thiamine pyrophosphokinase 1 (*TPK1*); thiamine diphosphate kinase (*TDPK*); thiamine triphosphate (*THTPA*); and the thiamine transporters *SLC25A19*, *SLC19A2/THTR1*, and *SLC19A3/THTR2* [2].

## Systemic Effects of Thiamine Deficiency

Thiamine deficiency affects numerous body systems. The brain relies heavily on mitochondrial adenosine triphosphate (ATP) production and is vulnerable to thiamine deficiency. Cases of thiamine deficiency can result in mild neurological and psychiatric symptoms, such as confusion, sleep disturbances, and decreased memory. Anorexia, weight loss, muscle weakness, and cardiovascular effects (e.g., enlarged heart), are also potential symptoms of thiamine deficiency [1]. Encephalopathy and ataxia can occur in more severe cases. Prolonged thiamine deficiency may also lead to congestive heart failure, muscle atrophy, and death [2].

The clinical syndrome of thiamine deficiency is referred to as beriberi. There are two forms of beriberi, each with a specific clinical presentation. Dry beriberi presents with neurological difficulties and can lead to peripheral neuropathy. Wet beriberi is a primarily cardiac presentation that leads to heart failure [3].

---

## RIBOFLAVIN

Also called vitamin B2, riboflavin is involved in oxidation-reduction reactions [1]. In particular, it functions as flavin mononucleotide (FMN) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) and participates in electron transport and the metabolism of lipids and drugs [6].

### ABSORPTION OF RIBOFLAVIN

Most riboflavin is absorbed in the small intestine by carrier-mediated processes [7; 8]. However, the duodenum, stomach, and colon can also absorb this vitamin [7].

About 95% of riboflavin in food is bioavailable, and up to a maximum of roughly 27 mg may be absorbed in a single dose [1]. When the body has a deficiency of riboflavin, additional amounts of the vitamin will be absorbed to resolve the deficiency [8].

### DIETARY RIBOFLAVIN

Major food sources for riboflavin include organ meats, poultry, fish, eggs, and dairy products such as milk and cheese. Grain products and fortified cereals are additional sources [1]. Certain vegetables such as spinach and beans can also provide riboflavin [7].

Natural grain products are low in riboflavin, but riboflavin bioavailability is enhanced when food is fortified [6]. Riboflavin is typically added to most vitamin-enriched products, such as cereals and baby foods. Moreover, some bacteria in the human microbiome can produce riboflavin [7].

## EXCESS RIBOFLAVIN

No adverse effects of excess riboflavin consumption have been observed [1]. Excess riboflavin is excreted by the kidney [6].

## RIBOFLAVIN DEFICIENCY

Riboflavin deficiency seldom occurs in isolation. When it does develop, it is typically in conjunction with other vitamin deficiencies, especially niacin and vitamin B6 [1]. Clinical symptoms of riboflavin deficiency occur after months of poor intake.

Certain populations are vulnerable to riboflavin deficiency. Up to 48% of vegans consume less than the recommended dietary reference intake (DRI) and are at risk of riboflavin deficiency. Athletes and others who engage in intense physical activity are at risk of deficiency due to the metabolic stress that occurs during sessions of increased physical activity [7].

Riboflavin deficiency can affect numerous body systems and functions, including iron utilization, the metabolism of tryptophan, mitochondrial function, and neurological and gastrointestinal tract functions [8]. Deficiency also impacts the metabolism of lipids and energy metabolism, the balance of oxidants and antioxidants (redox balance), and metabolism of drugs [6]. Signs and symptoms include sore throat, edema and hyperemia of the pharyngeal and oral mucous membranes, cheilosis, angular stomatitis, glossitis (magenta tongue), seborrheic dermatitis (dandruff), and normocytic anemia [1].

Riboflavin deficiency may be associated with the development of cataracts due to the impaired regeneration of reduced glutathione in the lens. Glutathione exists in high concentrations in the reduced form and protects the lens from oxidative damage [8].

### Riboflavin Deficiency Caused by Genetic Disorders

Riboflavin deficiency may be caused by genetic disorders. Persistent riboflavin deficiency is seen in patients with Brown-Vialetto-Van Laere (BVVL) and Fazio-Londe syndromes. BVVL syndrome is characterized by hearing loss and sensory ataxia and causes progressive muscle weakness, optic atrophy, progressive upper limb weakness, bulbar weakness, and sensory ataxia [6].

Riboflavin deficiency may be caused by inborn errors of metabolism. Riboflavin supplementation is a well-accepted therapy in the management of multiple acyl-CoA dehydrogenation deficiency (MADD) and riboflavin transporter deficiencies, leading to significant clinical improvement or stabilization in most patients [7].

## RIBOFLAVIN SUPPLEMENTATION IN PREVENTIVE HEALTH CARE

### Riboflavin and Migraine Headaches

Riboflavin has been studied as a possible approach to prevention of migraine headaches. Riboflavin is a precursor in the

mitochondrial electron transport chain and a cofactor in the Krebs cycle. Greater availability of riboflavin may improve brain mitochondrial function, and riboflavin supplementation reduced the frequency of migraine attacks and the number of headache days [8].

### Riboflavin and Cardiovascular Disease

Riboflavin may also play a role in the prevention of cardiovascular disease. High levels of the amino acid homocysteine are associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease. Approximately 5% to 30% of the population is homozygous for the genetic variant c.677C>T that is linked to high levels of homocysteine. A daily dose of 1.6 mg of riboflavin for 12 weeks significantly lowered the amount of plasma homocysteine in those homozygous for the c.677C>T variant, possibly decreasing the risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) [7].

---

## NIACIN

---

Niacin refers to nicotinamide, nicotinic acid, and the derivatives of these compounds. This vitamin is involved in intracellular respiration and the manufacture of fatty acids [1]. Niacin can donate or accept hydride ions in numerous redox reactions, including intracellular respiration, the oxidation of fuel molecules, and the making of fatty acids [1]. Flavin mononucleotide (FMN) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) are essential cofactors for enzyme-catalyzed reactions [7].

### ABSORPTION OF NIACIN

Niacin is primarily absorbed in the small intestines, with a smaller amount absorbed in the stomach [1]. Even when taken in very high doses, niacin is almost completely absorbed. Once absorbed, physiologic amounts of niacin are metabolized to nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD).

### DIETARY NIACIN

Niacin requirements vary by life stage and sex. Boys and men 14 years of age and older require 16 mg/day, while girls and women 14 years of age and older require 14 mg/day. Pregnancy and lactation increase the demand to 18 mg and 17 mg, respectively [1].

Meat, fish, and poultry are rich sources of niacin. Further, whole-grain breads and bread products and ready-to-eat cereals are also niacin sources [1]. Most developed countries fortify flour and cereal products 1–50 mg/niacin per 200 kcal [9]. Tryptophan can be converted to NAD at a low efficiency. Because of this, the concept of niacin equivalents (NE) when determining intake. Total food NE is calculated as the mg niacin plus 1/60 mg tryptophan. Most grains (other than corn, nuts, and legumes) are good sources of NE because they contain a combination of nicotinic acid and tryptophan [9].

## EXCESS NIACIN

The upper limit for niacin is 35 mg/day for adults from supplements and fortified foods, but this does not apply to niacin that naturally occurs in food or to tryptophan [9]. Excess niacin intake from fortified food and supplements may cause flushing, nausea and vomiting, liver toxicity, blurry vision, and impaired glucose tolerance [1].

## NIACIN DEFICIENCY

Niacin deficiency can result in pellagra, a disease characterized by dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia, and even death. The dementia presents similar to schizophrenia, with hallucinations and delusions, and responds within hours of beginning niacin therapy. The dermatitis results from sun exposure, which suggests a defect in DNA repair [9].

Epidemics of pellagra have been noted in populations that eat mostly corn. Corn is low in tryptophan, and any existing niacin in corn is tightly bound and must be processed with alkali become bioavailable [9].

## NIACIN AND CARDIOVASCULAR HEALTH

Niacin has beneficial effects on plasma lipoproteins and clinical benefits in decreasing cardiovascular events and the progression of atherosclerosis [10]. Pharmacological doses of 1–3 g per day of nicotinic acid produce short-term improvements in the ratio of high-density lipoprotein to low-density lipoprotein (HDL:LDL) [9]. Niacin lowers LDL and very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) cholesterol, while increasing HDL cholesterol. Niacin inhibits triglyceride synthesis, which in turn results in accelerated intracellular hepatic apolipoprotein B degradation and the decreased secretion of VLDL and LDL particles. Niacin also increases the vascular endothelial cell redox state, thereby inhibiting oxidative stress and the key cytokines involved in atherosclerosis [11].

It is important to note that long-term use of pharmacologic doses of niacin is not recommended. Administration of high doses of niacin over longer periods may increase the risks for skin flushing and itching, sometimes called niacin flush [1; 9]. Prolonged administration may lead to gastrointestinal and musculoskeletal complications and heart failure. Niacin also increases glucose uptake in intestinal cells, thereby leading to increased fasting glucose and potentially causing insulin resistance, new-onset diabetes, and rebound lipid overload [9].

---

## PANTOTHENIC ACID

---

Pantothenic acid is also called vitamin B5. Its name is derived from the Greek word *pantos*, which means “found everywhere” [12]. Pantothenic acid is a component of coenzyme A, which participates in fatty acid metabolism and is also a component of 4’phosphopantetheine, both of which must first be hydrolyzed in the intestinal lumen before being absorbed by a sodium-dependent transport mechanism [1]. Pantothenic acid helps make coenzyme A and acyl carrier proteins [13].

## ABSORPTION OF PANTOTHENIC ACID

Pantothenic acid is absorbed in the intestine and delivered directly into the bloodstream by active transport (and possibly simple diffusion at higher doses). Pantetheine, the dephosphorylated form of phosphopantetheine, however, is first taken up by intestinal cells and converted to pantothenic acid before being delivered into the bloodstream.

## DIETARY PANTOTHENIC ACID

Adequate intake is 5 mg/day for both boys/men and girls/women 14 years of age and older. Pregnant individuals require 6 mg/day, and lactating people need 7 mg/day [1].

Pantothenic acid is widely distributed in foods, including chicken, beef, liver, kidney, egg yolks, potatoes, whole grains, oat cereals, broccoli, and tomatoes [1]. Almonds, peanuts, and peanut butter are also sources, as are wheat bran and cheese [12]. Pantothenic acid is susceptible to oxidation, and large amounts are lost during food processing [13]:

- Refined grains: 37% to 47% loss
- Canned meats: 20% to 30% loss
- Canned vegetables: 46% to 78% loss
- Frozen vegetables: 37% to 57% loss

Pantothenic acid is made by intestinal micro-organisms, although the exact amount is unknown [13].

## EXCESS PANTOTHENIC ACID

No adverse effects have been observed with high doses of pantothenic acid. Therefore, pantothenic acid has no upper limit [1].

## DEFICIENCY OF PANTOTHENIC ACID

Deficiency of pantothenic acid may manifest as neurological, immunological, hematological, reproductive, and gastrointestinal pathologies. In humans, deficiency causes numbness and burning of feet and hands, headache, insomnia, fatigue, anorexia with gastric disturbances, increased sensitivity to insulin, and impaired antibody production [13].

## PANTOTHENIC ACID SUPPLEMENTATION IN PREVENTIVE HEALTH CARE

### Pantothenic Acid and Cardiovascular Health

Pantothenic acid may aid in promoting cardiovascular health. When provided in doses of 500–1,200 mg per day, panteine, the dimer of pantothenic acid, can lower total serum cholesterol, LDL, and triglycerides and raise HDL in patients with dyslipidemia, hypercholesterolemia, and hyperlipoproteinemia associated with diabetes [13].

Low-grade inflammation, represented by elevated levels of C-reactive protein (CRP), plays an essential role in the early stages of atherosclerosis. Pantothenic acid may have an antioxidant effect. In a study of 908 subjects in South Korea, dietary pantothenic acid was inversely related to subsequent CRP concentration [14].

### **Pantothenic Acid and Brain Health**

Cerebral pantothenate deficiency is a metabolic defect in those with Huntington disease that could possibly impair the synthesis of CoA by neurons, stimulate polyol-pathway activity, impede glycolysis and tricarboxylic acid activity, and alter brain-urea metabolism. However, it is not known whether the metabolic changes in pantothenic acid deficiency themselves cause brain damage, or whether the metabolic problems occur at later states in the pathogenic process and are not involved in neurodegeneration [15]. Treatment involves oral supplementation with high doses of pantothenic acid to replenish the depleted levels in the brain.

---

## **VITAMIN B6**

---

Also called pyridoxine, vitamin B6 acts as a coenzyme in more than 150 biochemical reactions [1]. It is active in the metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids, amino acids, and nucleic acids (including DNA and neurotransmitters) and participates in cellular signaling [16; 17]. Vitamin B6 also acts as an antioxidant and may decrease the level of advanced glycation end products in the blood [17]. Vitamin B6 is made up of a group of six related compounds: pyridoxal (PL), pyridoxine (PN), pyridoxamine (PM), and their respective 5'-phosphates, PLD, PNP and PMP. The active form of B6 is pyridoxal phosphate (PLP), which serves as a cofactor for approximately 160 reactions in the body. PLP reduces inflammation in the body by affecting the activity of inflammasomes. PLP also influences the renin-angiotensin systems to control processes such as blood pressure regulation and blood clotting, ensures endothelial integrity, and platelet aggregation [17].

PLP also participates in the transformation of sphingosine-1 phosphate (S1P), formed in platelets but stored in red blood cells. In the red blood cells, PLP is protected against decomposition. S1P is a powerful inflammatory regulator that plays a role in the release of lymphocytes from the lymphoid organs. PLP also acts as a cofactor in the metabolism of tryptophan.

### **ABSORPTION OF VITAMIN B6**

The human body absorbs vitamin B6 in the jejunum. Phosphorylated forms of the vitamin are dephosphorylated, and the pool of free vitamin B6 is absorbed by passive diffusion.

### **DIETARY VITAMIN B6**

The DRI for vitamin B6 in those 14 years of age and older is 1.3–1.7 mg per day [17]. The recommended daily intake is increased in pregnant or lactating patients, to 1.9 mg or 2.0 mg, respectively. Food sources of vitamin B6 include chickpeas, fortified cereals, organ meats (e.g., beef liver), fortified soy-based meat substitutes, starchy vegetables, and some non-citrus fruits (e.g., banana, watermelon) [1].

### **EXCESS VITAMIN B6**

No ill effects of vitamin B6 have been observed with high intakes of the vitamin from food sources. Very large oral doses (2,000 mg/day or higher) of vitamin B6 supplements have been linked to the development of sensory neuropathy and skin lesions [1].

### **DEFICIENCY OF VITAMIN B6**

When PLP is deficient, S1P is inhibited, thereby stopping lymphocytes in lymphatic organs and in places where inflammatory processes occur, leading to immunosuppression, local exacerbation of inflammatory processes, and an increase in the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines [17].

### **VITAMIN B6 SUPPLEMENTATION AND PREVENTIVE HEALTH CARE**

#### **Vitamin B6 and Diabetes**

Vitamin B6 intake may be inversely related to the progression of diabetes. Vitamin B6 may improve the activity of plasma insulin, thereby decreasing blood glucose. Vitamin B6 also lowers postprandial blood glucose levels after the ingestion of sucrose and starch by inhibiting the activity of small-intestinal  $\alpha$ -glucosidases. It is unclear whether diabetes decreases PLP levels or whether low PLP levels trigger diabetes [16].

In the setting of diabetes, a low level of vitamin B6 may increase the risk for cancer. Vitamin B6 ameliorates advanced glycation end products (AGEs) that can contribute to the development of diabetes. As noted, PLP is both an antioxidant and a cofactor for enzymes involved in DNA metabolism. In contrast, PLP deficiency can create DNA damage through the formation of AGEs. In a state of oxidative stress, in which antioxidants are depleted and the means to repair DNA is weak, genotoxic effects may be amplified, thereby increasing the risk for cancer [16].

#### **Vitamin B6 and Premenstrual Syndrome**

Premenstrual syndrome (PMS) refers to a variety of physical, emotional, and behavioral symptoms that occur during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle. These changes include abdominal cramps, bloating, headache, mood swings, irritability/anger, breast tenderness, and food cravings. A meta-analysis of 12 studies revealed that a daily intake of 100–250 mg of vitamin B6 was more effective than a placebo in reducing physical signs and symptoms of PMS, including abdominal pain, muscle pain, and breast tenderness [18].

Several mechanisms may be responsible for the reduction of PMS symptoms. Because pyridoxine is an immediate precursor of serotonin and dopamine, deficiency may decrease dopamine in the kidneys. This can increase sodium excretion, which in turn creates water retention, leading to edema, swelling in extremities, and discomfort in the chest and abdomen. Also, deficiency may lead to reduced concentrations of noradrenaline and serotonin [18].

## FOLATE

Folate is a general term that refers to vitamin B9 that either naturally occurs in food or that occurs in fortified foods and dietary supplements. Folate acts as a coenzyme in the metabolism of nucleic and amino acids.

The requirements for folate are based on dietary folate equivalents (DFEs), which are adjusted for differences in the absorption of folate from foods and supplements. The bioavailability of folate is approximately 50% lower in foods than in supplements [1]. One mcg of DFE is equal to 1.0 mg of folate from food, 0.6 mcg of folate added to food or folate supplement consumed with food, or 0.5 mcg of folate supplement taken on an empty stomach [1]. The recommended daily intake of folate is 400 mcg DFE for persons 14 years of age and older. For pregnant individuals and those who are breastfeeding, the recommended daily intake is 600 mcg DFE and 500 mcg DFE, respectively.

### ABSORPTION OF FOLATE

Folate is absorbed in the duodenum and proximal jejunum [19]. Dietary sources of folate are bound to protein in the food and must be freed by digestion or processing before absorption.

### DIETARY FOLATE

Folate is naturally present in a wide variety of foods, including vegetables (especially dark green leafy vegetables), fruits and fruit juices, nuts, beans, peas, seafood, eggs, dairy products, meat, poultry, and grains. Spinach, liver, asparagus, and brussels sprouts are among the foods with the highest folate levels. Folate is also produced by intestinal bacteria.

In January 1998, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) began requiring manufacturers to add 140 mcg folic acid/100 g to enriched breads, cereals, flours, corn meals, pastas, rice, and other grain products to reduce the risk of neural tube defects. Because cereals and grains are widely consumed in the United States, these products have become important contributors of folic acid to the American diet [20].

### EXCESS FOLATE

Large amounts of folate can correct the megaloblastic anemia, but not the neurological damage, that can result from vitamin B12 deficiency. Some experts have therefore been concerned that high intakes of folate supplements might mask vitamin B12 deficiency until its neurological consequences become irreversible [1; 19]. Concerns have also been raised that high folic acid intakes might accelerate the progression of preneoplastic lesions, increasing the risk of colorectal and possibly other cancers in certain individuals [19]. In addition, some scientists have hypothesized that unmetabolized folic acid might be related to cognitive impairment among older adults

## DEFICIENCY OF FOLATE

Folate deficiency is the most prevalent vitamin deficiency in the world. In adults, folate deficiency carries numerous risks and can lead to macrocytic anemia, muscle weakness, difficulty walking, and neurological manifestations. High serum levels of homocysteine are an independent risk factor for the development of atherosclerosis. Supplements of 0.5–5.0 mg/day could lower serum homocysteine levels, thereby decreasing the risk of ischemic heart disease by 11% and decreasing stroke risk by 19% [19].

Hereditary folate malabsorption manifests early in life and is characterized by poor feeding, normocytic or macrocytic anemia, pancytopenia, opportunistic infection, behavioral disorders, neuropathy, and seizures. Polymorphism decreases the activity of the MTHFR enzyme, resulting in a decrease in folate concentrations in plasma, serum, and red blood cells [21]. The MTHFR deficit increases the risk of low folate status and high homocysteine levels [19].

Aside from genetic causes, environmental factors can also impact folate levels. Poor dietary intake is the most likely cause, but persons who smoke cigarettes tend to have poor folate status due alterations in the distribution of folate forms [1].

### Folate and Neural Tube Defects

Folate is critical for the development of the fetal nervous system and protects against neural tube defects, especially spina bifida [19]. The neural tube forms by 28 days after conception, so supplementation prior to and immediately after conception is vital. The U.S. Public Health Service recommends that all individuals capable of becoming pregnant take 400 mcg of folic acid per day to prevent birth defects [21].

### Treatment of Folate Deficiency

There are three main ways to increase folate status. The first is to increase consumption of foods that are naturally high in folate. However, it can be extremely difficult to consume the recommended level of folate from foods alone. As such, a second approach is to increase consumption of foods that are fortified with folic acid. Wheat flour, corn flour, and rice are most typical vehicles for folic acid enrichment. The final approach is to take a folic acid supplement.

### INTERACTIONS OF FOLATE WITH OTHER SUBSTANCES

Folate interacts with a number of other dietary substances. Among persons with alcohol use disorder, ethanol intake may worsen folate deficiency by impairing intestinal absorption of folate and increasing folate excretion by the kidneys. Anticonvulsant drugs, such as phenobarbital and diphenylhydantoin, may impair folate status; individuals who take these drugs may require folate supplements [1].

Antifolates are used a class of medications primarily used in the treatment of cancers (e.g., acute myeloid leukemia, lung cancer, osteosarcoma), chronic inflammatory diseases (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease), and parasitic and bacterial infections [19]. These drugs cause an intended folate deficiency, and folic acid supplementation may inhibit their action.

Very large doses of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) may also exert antifolate activity. Other medications that inhibit folate include pyrimethamine, trimethoprim, triamterene, trimetrexate, and sulfasalazine [1].

---

## VITAMIN B12

---

Vitamin B12 is an essential nutrient found in several foods. Because vitamin B12 contains the mineral cobalt, compounds with vitamin B12 activity are collectively called cobalamins [22]. Methylcobalamin and 5-deoxyadenosylcobalamin are the metabolically active forms of vitamin B12. However, two other forms, hydroxycobalamin and cyanocobalamin, become biologically active after they are converted to methylcobalamin or 5-deoxyadenosylcobalamin.

Vitamin B12 is required for the development, myelination, and function of the central nervous system; healthy red blood cell formation; and DNA synthesis [1]. Vitamin B12 functions as a cofactor for two enzymes: methionine synthase and L-methylmalonyl-CoA mutase. Methionine synthase catalyzes the conversion of homocysteine to the essential amino acid methionine. Methionine is required for the formation of S-adenosylmethionine, a universal methyl donor for almost 100 different substrates, including DNA, RNA, proteins, and lipids [22].

### ABSORPTION OF VITAMIN B12

Vitamin B12 is actively absorbed in the stomach and small intestine. Four components are required to absorb vitamin B12: an intact stomach, pancreatic sufficiency, intrinsic factor, and a normally functioning terminal ileum. Vitamin B12 status tends to decline with age due to decreased stomach acidity, atrophic gastritis, and bacterial overgrowth [1].

### DIETARY VITAMIN B12

Vitamin B12, also called cobalamin, is naturally found in foods of animal origin; shellfish, organ meats, game meats (e.g., rabbit, venison), and some fish (e.g., herring, sardines, trout) are rich sources [1]. Fortified dairy products and cereals are other potential dietary sources [23].

### EXCESS VITAMIN B12

No adverse effects have been observed with high intakes of vitamin B12 in healthy individuals. Even when high doses of B12 are given, the human gastrointestinal tract only absorbs a small percentage [1].

### DEFICIENCY OF VITAMIN B12

In humans, the liver can store 4–5 mg of vitamin B12. This amount is sufficient to meet requirements for four to five years. Clinical features of deficiency are evident by five years and include fatigue, shortness of breath, and heart palpitations [23]. Deficiency may also lead to neurological manifestations, including numbness and tingling in the extremities (worse in lower extremities), gait disturbance, and cognitive changes, including memory loss and dementia. Individuals may also have a sore tongue, loss of appetite, constipation, and flatulence [1]. Megaloblastic anemia is a potential hematological effect [23].

The causes of vitamin B12 deficiency are numerous and include pernicious anemia, gastric disease, chronic atrophic gastritis, pancreatic disease, pancreatectomy, resection of the ileum, bacterial overgrowth, or HIV infection. Malnutrition, vegetarianism, or vegan diet may also lead to deficiency [23].

Persons with a deficiency of vitamin B12 may be at greater risk for cardiovascular disease. A high level of homocysteine may result in a shortage of folic acid and vitamin B12. High homocysteine levels have been linked to cardiovascular disease and stroke [23].

Homocysteine is a neurotoxin. Low levels of vitamin B12 contribute to high levels of homocysteine, which causes injury to the brain via oxidative stress [23].

---

## CONCLUSION

---

The B vitamins are critical for numerous functions in the human body, and deficiency of these important vitamins results in numerous health problems. Practitioners should be careful to counsel patients about meeting the minimum daily requirements of these nutrients via diet and lifestyle. In addition, food fortification and supplements are helpful for increasing intakes.

Customer Information and Evaluation are located on pages 119–120.



## SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

## #38130 THE B VITAMINS

After reviewing the course, complete the following Self-Assessment Questions. Receive immediate feedback by reviewing the Study Guide provided on page 32. Please record the number of questions you correctly answered on the Evaluation. The Evaluation must be completed in order to receive credit for this course.

This 2 contact hour activity must be completed by November 30, 2027.

1. The richest food sources of thiamine are
  - A) Fruits and vegetables
  - B) Dairy products
  - C) Meats, whole grains, yeast, and legumes
  - D) Olive and palm oils
2. To prevent deficiencies, the population should
  - A) eat only low-fat foods
  - B) consume a fortified food daily
  - C) begin intermittent fasting
  - D) drink more coffee
3. Which compounds compromise thiamine status?
  - A) tannins, caffeine, and theobromine
  - B) cholesterol, sodium, and glucose
  - C) calcium, magnesium, and potassium
  - D) folic acid, vitamin B6 and vitamin B12
4. Natural food sources of riboflavin are:
  - A) Apples, oranges, and bananas
  - B) Potato chips, popcorn, and candy bars
  - C) Leafy greens, such as kale and spinach
  - D) organ meats, eggs, milk, and cheese
5. What type of deficiency may be associated with the development of cataracts due to the decreased concentration of reduced glutathione in the lens of the eye.
  - A) Thiamine
  - B) Riboflavin
  - C) Niacin
  - D) Folate
6. Which deficiency disease is characterized by dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia, and death?
  - A) Pellagra; niacin
  - B) Beriberi; thiamine
  - C) Cataracts; riboflavin
  - D) Megaloblastic anemia; Folate
7. What type of deficiency has been identified as a metabolic defect in those with Huntington disease?
  - A) Pellagra
  - B) Beri beri
  - C) Cerebral pantothenate deficiency
  - D) Megaloblastic anemia
8. Which vitamin may be inversely related to the progression of diabetes?
  - A) Thiamine
  - B) Niacin
  - C) Vitamin B6
  - D) Folate
9. Women who are capable of becoming pregnant should take how much folate daily?
  - A) 100 mcg
  - B) 500 mcg
  - C) 400 mcg
  - D) 200 mcg
10. An elderly person with a history of gastritis presents with weakness, fatigue, and shortness of breath. Laboratory evaluation reveals megaloblastic anemia. What is the diagnosis?
  - A) Thiamine deficiency
  - B) Vitamin B12 deficiency
  - C) Folate deficiency
  - D) Pantothenate deficiency

# STUDY GUIDE

## COURSE #38130 THE B VITAMINS

This Study Guide has been included to provide immediate feedback about your achievement for the course learning objectives. The correct answers for the Self-Assessment Questions and their locations within the text are indicated below.

- The richest food sources of thiamine are**  
C) Meats, whole grains, yeast, and legumes (Thiamine; Dietary Thiamine)
- To prevent deficiencies, the population should**  
B) consume a fortified food daily (Thiamine; Dietary Thiamine)
- Which compounds compromise thiamine status?**  
A) tannins, caffeine, and theobromine (Thiamine; Thiamine Deficiency; Foods that Compromise Thiamine Status)
- Natural food sources of riboflavin are:**  
D) organ meats, eggs, milk, and cheese (Riboflavin; Dietary Riboflavin)
- What type of deficiency may be associated with the development of cataracts due to the decreased concentration of reduced glutathione in the lens of the eye.**  
B) Riboflavin (Riboflavin; Riboflavin Deficiency)
- Which deficiency disease is characterized by dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia, and death?**  
A) Pellagra; niacin (Niacin; Niacin Deficiency)
- What type of deficiency has been identified as a metabolic defect in those with Huntington disease?**  
C) Cerebral pantothenate deficiency (Pantothenic Acid; Pantothenic Acid Supplementation in Preventive Health Care; Pantothenic Acid and Brain Health)
- Which vitamin may be inversely related to the progression of diabetes?**  
C) Vitamin B6 (Vitamin B6; Vitamin B6 Supplementation and Preventive Health Care; Vitamin B6 and Diabetes)
- Women who are capable of becoming pregnant should take how much folate daily?**  
C) 400 mcg (Folate; Deficiency of Folate; Folate and Neural Tube Defects)
- An elderly person with a history of gastritis presents with weakness, fatigue, and shortness of breath. Laboratory evaluation reveals megaloblastic anemia. What is the diagnosis?**  
B) Vitamin B12 deficiency (Vitamin B12; Deficiency of Vitamin B12)

# Chronic Cough in Adults

Includes 5 Pharmacotherapeutic/Pharmacology Hours

## **Audience**

This course is designed for nurses, physicians, and physician assistants/associates involved in the care of patients with chronic cough.

## **Course Objective**

Chronic cough is difficult to effectively assess and treat, leading to extended periods before diagnosis and significant negative impact on patients' quality of life. The purpose of this course is to provide clinicians with the knowledge and skills necessary to identify and treat patients with chronic cough, regardless of underlying etiology, in accordance with clinical guidelines.

## **Learning Objectives**

Upon completion of this course, you should be able to:

1. Describe the background and terminology related to chronic cough.
2. Compare and contrast available cough severity measures.
3. Outline the epidemiology of chronic cough and underlying etiologies.
4. Evaluate the impact of chronic cough on various dimensions of patients' lives.
5. Discuss the natural history and course of chronic cough.
6. Describe the pathophysiology of chronic cough.
7. Outline components of the initial evaluation of patients with chronic cough.
8. Identify potential underlying etiologies of chronic cough as well as appropriate management approaches for these conditions.
9. Analyze available treatment modalities for chronic cough of various underlying causes, including upper respiratory, lower respiratory, and reflux-associated cough.
10. Identify appropriate modalities for the treatment of refractory chronic cough, including pharmacotherapy, nonpharmacologic approaches, and investigational agents.

## **Faculty**

**Mark Rose, BS, MA, LP**, is a licensed psychologist in the State of Minnesota with a private consulting practice and a medical research analyst with a biomedical communications firm. Earlier healthcare technology assessment work led to medical device and pharmaceutical sector experience in new product development involving cancer ablative devices and pain therapeutics. Along with substantial experience in addiction research, Mr. Rose has contributed to the authorship of numerous papers on CNS, oncology, and other medical disorders. He is the lead author of papers published in peer-reviewed addiction, psychiatry, and pain medicine journals and has written books on prescription opioids and alcoholism published by the Hazelden Foundation. He also serves as an Expert Advisor and Expert Witness to law firms that represent disability claimants or criminal defendants on cases related to chronic pain, psychiatric/substance use disorders, and acute pharmacologic/toxicologic effects. Mr. Rose is on the Board of Directors of the Minneapolis-based International Institute of Anti-Aging Medicine and is a member of several professional organizations.

## **Faculty Disclosure**

Contributing faculty, Mark Rose, BS, MA, LP, has disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

## **Division Planner**

Mary Franks, MSN, APRN, FNP-C

## **Senior Director of Development and Academic Affairs**

Sarah Campbell

## **Division Planner/Director Disclosure**

The division planner and director have disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

### Accreditations & Approvals



In support of improving patient care, NetCE is jointly accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), the Accreditation Council for Pharmacy Education (ACPE), and the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC), to provide continuing education for the healthcare team.

### Designations of Credit

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 10 ANCC contact hours.



This activity was planned by and for the healthcare team, and learners will receive 10 Interprofessional Continuing Education (IPCE) credits for learning and change.

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 5 pharmacotherapeutic/pharmacology contact hours.

AACN Synergy CERP Category A.

### Individual State Nursing Approvals

In addition to states that accept ANCC, NetCE is approved as a provider of continuing education in nursing by: Alabama, Provider #ABNP0353 (valid through 07/29/2025); Arkansas, Provider #50-2405; California, BRN Provider #CEP9784; California, LVN Provider #V10662; California, PT Provider #V10842; District of Columbia, Provider #50-2405; Florida, Provider #50-2405; Georgia, Provider #50-2405; Kentucky, Provider #7-0054 (valid through 12/31/2025); South Carolina, Provider #50-2405; West Virginia, RN and APRN Provider #50-2405.

### About the Sponsor

The purpose of NetCE is to provide challenging curricula to assist healthcare professionals to raise their levels of expertise while fulfilling their continuing education requirements, thereby improving the quality of healthcare.

Our contributing faculty members have taken care to ensure that the information and recommendations are accurate and compatible with the standards generally accepted at the time of publication. The publisher disclaims any liability, loss or damage incurred as a consequence, directly or indirectly, of the use and application of any of the contents. Participants are cautioned about the potential risk of using limited knowledge when integrating new techniques into practice.

### Disclosure Statement

It is the policy of NetCE not to accept commercial support. Furthermore, commercial interests are prohibited from distributing or providing access to this activity to learners.

### How to Receive Credit

- Read the following course.
- Complete the Self-Assessment Questions at the end of the course. (**No test required.**)
- Complete the Evaluation.
- Return your Customer Information/Evaluation and payment to NetCE by mail, or complete online at [www.NetCE.com/PA25](http://www.NetCE.com/PA25).
- A full Works Cited list is available online at [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com).

## INTRODUCTION

Chronic cough, or cough lasting longer than eight weeks, is a debilitating disease that can result in patients coughing hundreds to thousands of times every day. This physically exhausting and socially isolating condition can persist for years or decades, degrade the quality of life in nearly every domain, and result in numerous medical and psychosocial consequences, yet its adverse impact on patients is often overlooked or underappreciated by clinicians. While acute cough is typically transient and self-limited, chronic cough often poses a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge; both non-treatment and over-treatment with ineffective medication are common [1; 2]. Cough that persists despite investigation and treatment is especially vexing for patients and clinicians [3].

## BACKGROUND

The anatomic, diagnostic protocol (ADP) established in the late 1970s that chronic cough in patients with negative chest x-ray findings is a symptom of asthma, postnasal drip, or acid reflux. Later refined to asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, upper airway cough syndrome, and GERD, it was believed that treating these underlying etiologies led to a favorable outcome in 90% of patients with chronic cough [4; 5; 6].

However, a large proportion of patients with these conditions do not have chronic cough [7]. Moreover, in many patients, cough persists despite treatment of its presumed cause (referred to as refractory chronic cough) or an underlying cause cannot be identified (referred to as unexplained chronic cough) [8]. This suggested that additional pathophysiological processes were involved [7].

CHRONIC COUGH TERMINOLOGY	
Term	Definition
Acute cough	Cough lasting less than 3 weeks
Subacute cough	Cough lasting 3 to 8 weeks
Chronic cough	Cough lasting more than 8 weeks
Refractory chronic cough	Cough that persists despite guideline-based treatment of the presumed underlying cause(s)
Unexplained chronic cough	No diagnosable cause of cough is found despite extensive investigation for common and uncommon causes
Allotussia	Cough triggered by innocuous stimuli (e.g., laughing, talking, changes in ambient temperature)
Hypertussia	Exaggerated coughing triggered by mildly tussive stimuli (e.g., strong odors, second-hand cigarette smoke)
Urge to cough (laryngeal paresthesia)	A distinct, often debilitating sensation of irritation or “itch” in the throat or chest that precede cough and is not satiated by coughing
Cough reflex hypersensitivity	The cardinal feature of cough hypersensitivity syndrome
Cough hypersensitivity syndrome	Disorder characterized by cough triggered by mildly tussive or innocuous stimuli, with features of allotussia, hypertussia, and/or laryngeal paresthesia
<i>Source: [5; 9; 26]</i>	

Table 1

In 2014, the European Respiratory Society (ERS) introduced cough hypersensitivity syndrome, defining chronic cough as a distinct clinical entity [9]. The 2020 ERS clinical practice guideline for chronic cough was pivotal in establishing cough hypersensitivity syndrome, influencing subsequent national and international chronic cough guidelines [10; 11; 12; 13].

In 2016, the “treatable traits approach” was introduced to improve the outcomes of pulmonary patients with complex clinical syndromes (e.g., asthma and COPD) and variable treatment responses by moving beyond practice guidelines directed at diagnostic categories as a single disease entity, to identify and treat relevant phenotypic and endotypic “traits” instead [14; 15; 16]. The treatable traits approach gained rapid acceptance in pulmonary medicine and endorsement in chronic cough guidelines [5; 17; 18].

Cough performs an essential physiological function, mediated by cough reflex pathways in the airways and brain. In some individuals, irritation or inflammation of vagal afferent nerves in the airway leads to cough reflex hypersensitivity, the cardinal feature of cough hypersensitivity syndrome, peripheral and central sensitization, and clinical manifestations of allotussia, hypertussia, and/or laryngeal paresthesia (**Table 1**) [3; 19; 20]. The demographic, pathophysiological, and clinical similarities between cough hypersensitivity syndrome and chronic neuropathic pain are numerous. Chronic pain research has substantially informed how chronic cough and cough hypersensitivity syndrome are understood; both are disorders of sensory processing [4; 21; 22].

Sensitization of cough pathways may persist long after resolution of the inciting acute or subacute event. These chronic coughs will remain unexplained by diagnostic workups that do not consider cough hypersensitivity. Cough hypersensitivity syndrome may improve with the targeted intervention of other treatable traits. If chronic cough persists, the patient has refractory chronic cough [5].

Refractory and unexplained chronic cough are diagnoses of exclusion. A thorough, systematic clinical workup is required so that non-obvious and obvious causes of chronic coughing can be identified. The treatable traits approach may significantly expand clinically important intervention targets. After a diagnosis of refractory/unexplained chronic cough is made, therapeutic attention shifts to downregulating the hypersensitive cough reflex [5].

Maturation in research and practice has led to novel and emerging therapeutic options for patients with refractory chronic cough. Randomized controlled trials of existing centrally acting agents have identified the efficacy of low-dose morphine and gabapentin [10; 23; 24]. The development of P2X3 receptor antagonists, a novel peripherally acting drug class, has led to the approval of gefapixant for the treatment of refractory chronic cough in the European Union, Japan, and Switzerland, with U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) advisory committee review believed imminent as of 2024 [25]. In a given patient, refractory/unexplained chronic cough may primarily involve peripheral mechanisms, central mechanisms, or both, and no tool is available for predicting therapeutic response to peripherally or centrally acting antitussive agents.

As of 2024, there are no FDA-approved treatments for chronic cough or for refractory chronic cough. When chronic cough persists after potential underlying causes are identified and treated according to current practice guidelines (e.g., for chronic cough related to nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis or GERD), all therapeutic options for refractory chronic cough are prescribed off-label.

Important knowledge advances in this rapidly evolving field are not reaching healthcare professionals in the United States because chronic cough guidelines published for domestic consumption have become outdated. From this course, clinicians will gain current information on chronic cough and refractory/unexplained chronic cough, including the pathophysiology, differential diagnosis, and clinical management, essential for healthcare professionals in primary care, respiratory medicine, and ear/nose/throat (ENT) settings.

---

### COUGH SEVERITY MEASURES

---

Patients with chronic cough experience cough-related physical, psychological, and social burdens, which can result from different aspects of cough severity, including cough frequency, cough intensity, disruption of daily activities due to cough, and cough-specific health-related quality of life. The severity and impact of chronic cough on physical, psychological, and social domains can be quantified through several validated objective and subjective measures [27].

Patient-reported outcome measures obtain a comprehensive understanding of the impact across these domains [27]. Patient-reported outcomes capture many issues that cannot be assessed effectively by objective measures and are also inexpensive, readily available, convenient, and easy to use for the patient [28]. A minimal clinically importance difference, the smallest change in an outcome that patients would perceive as important, is established for both objective and patient-reported outcome tools [29]. Cough measures mentioned throughout this course are summarized in **Table 2**. Cough frequencies of greater than 700 over an hour have been recorded [28].

---

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

---

#### PREVALENCE

Cough is a frequent reason for seeking outpatient medical attention in the United States, accounting for as many as 30 million clinical visits per year, up to 40% of which result in specialist referral [31].

Chronic cough has a prevalence among U.S. adults of roughly 10%, of whom 92% visited healthcare clinicians in the past six months [32]. Chronic cough is estimated to cost \$6.8 billion annually in the United States, and an estimated \$3.6 billion is spent annually on over-the-counter therapies [33].

The economic implications of chronic cough include the cost of outpatient visits, plus diagnostic workups, prescription medications to treat cough, and lost work and lost school productivity [1]. While inconsistent definitions prohibit direct comparisons of chronic cough prevalence between different countries or ethnicities, chronic cough appears to be more common in Europe, North America, and Australia than in Asian countries [32; 34].

In KNHANES, a nationally representative study of the Korean adult population, the point prevalence of acute (<3 weeks), subacute (3 to 8 weeks), and chronic (>8 weeks) cough was 2.5%, 0.8% and 2.6%, respectively. The modal durations of current cough were less than one week (31.1%), and more than one year (27.7%); this bimodal distribution reflects the different pathophysiology of acute and chronic cough [35].

#### REFRACTORY AND UNEXPLAINED CHRONIC COUGH

Refractory chronic cough is seen in 20% to 59% of patients presenting to specialist cough clinics [36]. At Kaiser Permanente Southern California, 11,290 patients with specialist-diagnosed chronic cough were treated and followed for one year; 40.6% continued coughing despite etiological treatment by specialists (i.e., refractory chronic cough) [37].

Roughly 10% of patients with chronic cough lack an identifiable cause despite thorough evaluation (i.e., unexplained chronic cough), including 17% of patients with chronic cough in the Kaiser Permanente cohort [1; 37]. Of 43,453 patients receiving primary care for chronic cough in the UK, 31% had ongoing chronic cough in the absence of associated comorbidities (i.e., no causal explanation or unexplained chronic cough) [4].

#### DISEASE BURDEN AND HEALTHCARE UTILIZATION

The Kaiser Permanente study examined the disease burden of chronic cough in comorbidities, medication use, and exacerbations [37]. Diagnoses included GERD (44%), hypertension (42%), allergic rhinitis (33%), chronic rhinitis (31.5%), asthma (31%), chronic sinusitis (24.4%), obesity (24%), upper airway cough syndrome (20.4%), depression (20%), and cough complications (19%). Nearly 40% of patients with unexplained chronic cough consulted at least two different specialist departments. In the previous three years, about half of the patients with emergency department visits (28.5%) or hospitalizations (10%) were for respiratory events [37]. Medications were respiratory: nasal corticosteroids (55%), short-acting b<sub>2</sub>-agonists (50.5%), inhaled corticosteroids long-acting b<sub>2</sub>-agonist (27%), inhaled corticosteroid monotherapy (24%), and leukotriene modifiers (18.6%); non-respiratory: antitussive codeine (59%), proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) (45%), antidepressants (26%), anxiolytics (15.5%), and gabapentinoids (14%); and other: systemic antibiotics (72.4%) and oral corticosteroids (47%).

COUGH MEASURES		
Name	Domains/Items, Rating and Minimal Clinically Importance Difference (MCID)	Comments
<b>Health-related quality of life patient-reported outcome tools</b>		
Leicester Cough Questionnaire (LCQ)	Seven-point Likert scale (1=all of the time; 7=none of the time); 19 items in 3 domains: physical, psychological, and social. Total score range: 3 (maximal impairment) to 21 (no quality-of-life impairment). MCID: 1.5 to 2.5 increase	The most widely used tool for assessing quality of life impact of chronic cough
Cough Quality of Life Questionnaire (CQLQ)	Four-point Likert scale (1=strongly disagree; 4=strongly agree); 28 items over 6 domains: physical and extreme physical complaints, psychosocial issues, emotional well-being, safety fears, and functional abilities. Total score range: 28 (no adverse effect of cough) to 112 (worst possible impact). MCID: 10.6 to 21.9	Contains more items on physical impact of chronic cough (e.g., fractured ribs, headaches, immune deficiency, tuberculosis)
Hull Airway Reflux Questionnaire (HARQ)	Six-point scale (0=no symptoms; 5=most severe) of 14 items that measure airway hypersensitivity in chronic cough. Total score range: 0 to 70 Normal is <14 MCID: 16	Also used as a diagnostic tool for airway reflux, and to assess unexplained respiratory symptoms
Cough Severity Diary (CSD)	11-point scale (0=never; 10=constantly) of 7 items on frequency; intensity; disruptiveness MCID $\geq 1.3$ total score, -1.4 to -1.1 domain scores	Captures the severity and impact of chronic cough. Developed in response to patient feedback.
<b>Objective assessment tools</b>		
VitaloJAK Cough monitor Leicester Cough Monitor (LCM)	Electronic cough recording monitors worn by patients to measure cough frequency, typically as coughs per hour over 24 hours MCID: $\geq 20\%$ to 30% decrease	Does not capture the episodic nature of chronic cough, a primary factor in patients' disease burden
<b>Subjective tools</b>		
Visual Analogue Scale (VAS)	Score range 0 (no cough) to 100 mm (worst cough ever) MCID: 30-mm reduction on the 100-mm cough severity VAS	—
Numerical Rating Scale (NRS)	Score range 0 (no cough) to 10 (worst cough ever)	
Source: [28; 29; 30]		

Table 2

Over one year, patients with emergency department visits (26%) and hospitalizations (12%) remained high; more than 50% were respiratory-related. Antitussive and psychotherapeutic drugs were dispensed at a frequency similar to the baseline year. The clinical and economic burden was especially high in patients with both respiratory disease and GERD, but chronic cough persistence (40.6%) was similar between subgroups [37].

A subsequent Kaiser Permanente study of patient-level burden used patient-related outcomes (average chronic cough 8 years) [38]. Mean scores were 11 on LCQ (maximum: 21), 33 on

HARQ (normal:  $\leq 13$ ), and 57 on CQLQ (maximum: 112). Correlations were high between LCQ and HARQ (-0.65), LCQ and CQLQ (-0.80), and HARQ and CQLQ (0.69). Patients with chronic cough-related respiratory and gastrointestinal disorders were generally similar. Treatment responses were suboptimal. Women (compared with men) and non-White individuals (compared with White individuals) reported significantly worse cough severity and poorer LCQ, HARQ, and CQLQ scores.

The patient-reported burden of chronic cough was substantial, with long duration, high severity, poor health status, high degree of cough hypersensitivity, low quality of life, multiple cough triggers, and frequent laboratory testing, specialist care, and medications. The study provides strong evidence that patients with chronic cough exhibit frequent poor responses to medications and overall control [38].

The objective and patient-reported burden of chronic cough is substantial, particularly in women and non-White minorities, which markedly affects daily living with inadequate response to treatments.

### RISK FACTORS

Risk factors of chronic cough include smoking, female sex, older age, obesity, asthma, allergic rhinitis, rhinosinusitis, and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor use for hypertension treatment [34; 39].

In the United States, 18% of adults who smoke cigarettes have chronic coughs [39]. Cigarette smokers are three times more likely to report chronic cough than never-smokers and ex-smokers, and the cough is usually due to chronic bronchitis. However, most patients in cough specialist clinics are nonsmokers [19]. Among 1,000 patients evaluated at a cough center in the Bronx, 2.7% were active smokers and 27% former smokers [40]. Of 11,290 Kaiser Permanente patients with chronic cough, 65% were never-smokers and 2.3% were current smokers [37].

Age and sex underlie the burden and prevalence of chronic cough; more than 67% of patients presenting with chronic cough to specialist clinics are female, likely due to gender differences in cough reflex sensitivity [1; 19]. Cough reflex sensitivity was assessed in individuals from China, India, and northwest Europe. No differences between ethnic groups were found, suggesting that racial variation in chronic cough prevalence may not reflect differences in cough reflex sensitivity and may be influenced by asthma, allergy, or environmental factors [34; 39; 41]. Women in all three ethnic groups demonstrated lower cough thresholds [41].

While chronic cough can occur at any age, the rate rises substantially in women who are 40 years of age or older and is highest in the 60 to 69 age group. The highest rates in men occur between 50 and 69 years of age [1]. In KNHANES, chronic cough increased significantly with age. The odds ratio of 2.20 suggests a substantial increase in chronic cough likelihood for individuals 65 years of age or older (compared with those 18 to 39 years of age). The associations with older age were independent of current smoking and comorbidities [35].

In separate longitudinal European population studies, chronic cough was associated with low educational level and lower socioeconomic status [34]. A systematic review found a significant association between low education level and risk of chronic cough [42].

In South Korea and China, higher male prevalence of chronic cough was attributed to differences in smoking habits and air pollution exposures, respectively [28]. Occupational irritants, such as fumes, gases, cleaning products or dust, may cause cough by triggering cough reflex or by inducing oxidative stress and eosinophilic inflammation, but the effect of such factors on chronic cough remains elusive. Air pollution is an important risk factor for chronic cough. Levels of fine particulate matter  $\leq 2.5$   $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter (or PM<sub>2.5</sub>) are higher in East Asian than in European or North American countries but the prevalence of chronic cough is lower, suggesting potential host-environment interactions in developing chronic cough [19].

Persistent cough is a class-wide adverse effect of ACE inhibitors, and the 5% to 35% prevalence is much higher in East Asian than in other populations. In genotype studies, the genetic polymorphisms ACE I/D and SLCO1B1 were related to ACE inhibitor-induced cough and were more common in East Asian populations, which may account for the ethnic differences and possibly predict risk of ACE inhibitor-induced cough [43].

---

## PATIENT IMPACT OF CHRONIC COUGH

---

Patients report numerous cough-related physical and psychosocial effects, most commonly fatigue, sleep disturbance, exhaustion, breathlessness, headache, dizziness, musculoskeletal pain, wheezing, impairment of speech, vomiting, excessive perspiration, self-consciousness, and interference with daily activities [28; 44]. These effects have a significant impact on patients' quality of life.

### PHYSICAL IMPACT

During vigorous coughing, intrathoracic pressures may reach 300 mm Hg and expiratory velocities approach 500 miles per hour (mph) (85% of the speed of sound). These physical forces cause many of the cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, genitourinary, quality of life, musculoskeletal, neurologic, ophthalmologic, psychosocial, and respiratory complications of chronic cough, ranging from the relatively minor to life-threatening or even fatal. Comorbid illnesses or older age can magnify these effects [44; 45].

### Surgical Complications and Hernia

Surgical complications from uncontrolled coughing include extrusion (i.e., expulsion) of ocular contents during eye surgery, and wound dehiscence (i.e., splitting or bursting open) following cardiac or abdominal surgery. Similarly, severe coughing can cause inguinal, femoral, umbilical, lumbar, or abdominal wall hernia [45].

### Fracture

Cough-induced rib fractures, another painful and potentially serious complication of chronic cough, often involve multiple ribs, particularly ribs 5 through 7. The number of ribs fractured is associated with higher mortality rates, particularly in



older patients who often have decreased bone density due to osteoporosis (also an adverse effect of long-term corticosteroid treatment). However, rib fractures can also occur in patients with normal bone density [44; 46].

### Stress Urinary Incontinence

Stress urinary incontinence, defined as the unintentional loss of urine during or following a bout of coughing or other physical activity, significantly contributes to quality-of-life disruption caused by chronic cough in women. Of 210 consecutive adult women evaluated at a cough center for chronic cough, 63.3% reported stress urinary incontinence induced by cough episodes; stress urinary incontinence developed after the onset of chronic cough and solely occurred during or after coughing in 92.5% and at least daily in 47.3%. For context, 3.5% of similarly aged women in the community experience stress urinary incontinence, while only 5% of men with chronic cough report stress urinary incontinence as an issue significantly impacting their quality of life [28; 47].

Surveys have reported lower rates of urinary incontinence in women with chronic cough, but most women will not volunteer a history of cough-induced stress urinary incontinence unless specifically asked. This may explain the higher prevalence in this study, because the establishment of trust between patient and physician may have encouraged sharing such information. After discussion ensues, patients are often relieved to learn this is a common problem faced by women with chronic cough [47].

### Cough Syncope

Cough-evoked syncope is a serious and potentially fatal consequence of coughing. Numerous reports of motor vehicle accidents resulting from cough syncope include the deaths of drivers and pedestrians. While the exact mechanism remains debated, the required generation of very high intrathoracic pressures likely explains the nearly uniform profile of patients with cough syncope as large male subjects with obstructive airway disease [48]. Cough syncope is considered relatively uncommon, although 10% of subjects with chronic cough in a community sample reported experiencing cough syncope [5; 49]. The mandatory loss of driver's license in some countries (e.g., the UK) has a major impact on employment prospects for these patients [28].

## PSYCHOSOCIAL AND QUALITY OF LIFE IMPACT

Chronic cough can interfere with all aspects of patients' lives, including daily living activities, social interactions, home management, recreational activities, and employment. Importantly, when triggers of coughing bouts are very difficult to avoid, the psychosocial impact can be substantial. Chronic cough has a negative impact on relationships, with spouses not being able to tolerate the cough as a key reason for patients' health-related dysfunction [28]. In a multinational European survey of 1,120 persons with chronic cough, most reported that coughing affected their quality of life (96%), disturbed their family and friends (94%), and affected activities they enjoyed (81%) [51].

The psychological effects associated with chronic cough are highly prevalent, with an impact on mental health comparable to that of stroke or Parkinson disease. Studies of patients with chronic cough have reported high rates of anxiety (33% to 52%) and depression (16% to 91%) [28].

Patients may avoid or be uncomfortable in social situations due to the embarrassment of coughing, its effects (e.g., stress urinary incontinence, retching), and/or the perception by others that they have a contagious condition or are a heavy smoker [28]. The COVID-19 pandemic increased the social stigma of persistent coughing due to its association with contagious respiratory diseases [50].

## NATURAL HISTORY AND DISEASE COURSE

Little is known about the natural history of cough hypersensitivity, but the available evidence suggests that patients often suffer from it for many years [4]. In a longitudinal study of patients with unexplained chronic cough, cough severity worsened (36%) or was unchanged (23%) over 7 to 10 years. Predictors of cough persistence or improvement could not be identified. Unexpectedly, longitudinal spirometry data showed declines in forced expiratory volumes over one second (FEV1) that were well above population norms for similarly aged nonsmokers. The striking magnitude of decline argued against a chance finding. Around 10% of patients developed spirometric features of COPD [52].

The abnormally rapid decline in FEV1 and a significant minority of patients developing COPD raise the possibility that unexplained chronic cough is associated with a persistent damaging airway process and could be a risk factor for COPD [52]. A 2023 study confirmed that chronic cough is highly associated with FEV1 decline, regardless of COPD presence, while chronic cough in patients suffering from COPD is associated with lower FEV1, more dyspnea, worse health status, and is an independent risk factor for exacerbations of COPD possibly linked to altered transient receptor potential (TRP) channel function [53].

Cough is often the most bothersome and intractable symptom reported by patients with asthma, and the significant disease burden of chronic cough was described in a prospective cohort of 323 consecutive adult participants with asthma who received optimized asthma therapy. After 12 months, those with chronic cough had more airflow obstruction; worse asthma control and quality of life; increased airway inflammation; upper respiratory tract infection as a trigger; more psychological, rhinitis, and COPD comorbidities; greater work productivity loss and daily activity impairment; and increased exacerbations. These findings call for more attention to chronic cough in asthma [54].

In summary, chronic cough is related to an accelerated FEV1 decline over time, regardless of smoking history or COPD diagnosis, but the relationship between chronic cough and worse clinical outcomes lacks a clear pathophysiological explanation [55].

---

## PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF CHRONIC COUGH

---

### NORMAL PHYSIOLOGY

#### The Cough Reflex

Cough is an innate reflex that protects the airways from foreign objects, clears excess secretions, and preserves airway patency. The cough reflex consists of peripheral airway receptors of afferent nerves, cough control centers in the central nervous system (CNS), and efferent nerves.

Cough occurs in three phases [31; 56]. The first is inspiratory, during which the glottis opens widely followed by rapid inhalation sufficient for generating enough air movement to be productive. The second phase is compression. This phase is characterized by the rapid closure of the glottic apparatus and contraction of abdominal and other respiratory muscles compresses the alveoli and bronchiole, increasing intrathoracic pressure to greater than 300 mm Hg. The final phase is expiration, or the sudden opening of the epiglottis and vocal cords results in rapid, high-volume expiratory airflow that may exceed 500 mph in velocity. The force of this process loosens and expels mucous secretions from the airway wall, while the rapid airflow vibrates the larynx and pharynx, inducing the characteristic sounds of cough.

#### Vagal Afferents

The cough reflex is activated by vagal afferent A- $\delta$  and C fibers, sensory neurons originating from brainstem vagal ganglia that innervate the larynx and proximal airways. A- $\delta$  fibers are mechanoreceptors, activated by airway mucus, inhaled foreign bodies, and low pH (i.e., acidity). C-fibers are nociceptive chemoreceptors, activated by signaling molecules and mediators of inflammation or tissue damage within the airway [19; 25; 57; 58].

#### Neurobiological Processes

Complex neurobiological processes in the peripheral nervous system, brainstem, and higher cerebral cortex mediate coughing [59]. Receptors (e.g., P2X3 purinergic receptors, voltage-gated sodium channels [NaV], bradykinin receptors, and transient receptor potential [TRP] ion channels) and neuropeptides (e.g., substance P, calcitonin gene-related peptide [CGRP]) play important roles [60].

Noxious mechanochemical stimuli in the airways activate ligand-gated ion channels and G protein-coupled receptors on vagal nerve endings; NaV channels depolarize, propagating

the signal up the vagus nerve to first-order synapses in brainstem nuclei. From there, the signal is relayed by second-order neurons to brainstem and spinal motor neurons to reflexively modify breathing; to third-order neurons of the primary somatosensory cortex where the unpleasant urge-to-cough sensation is mediated; and to higher-order cortical neurons that mediate conscious perception of cough [23; 60].

These ascending third-order pathways enable perception of airway irritation, and regulatory control of descending motor pathways that terminate in the brainstem and in spinal respiratory circuits [22; 61]. Under physiologic conditions, higher inhibitory brain processes permit the modification of coughing behavior, and the urge to cough may be suppressed [21].

Extrapulmonary airways (i.e., larynx, trachea, and mainstem bronchi) are also reflexogenic sites essential for preventing aspiration, inhalation of noxious chemicals, and accumulation of excessive mucus; all can induce reflex coughing with irritation of vagal afferent nerves [21].

Coughing is a reflex and a voluntary behavior with or without the sensation of an urge to cough. Reflex cough, behavioral cough, and the urge to cough (which precedes the motor act of coughing) are three separate entities, each dependent on their own neural processes [21; 22]. The relevance of these neurophysiological processes is apparent when considering the development of cough hypersensitivity syndrome [21].

### PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF CHRONIC COUGH AND COUGH REFLEX HYPERSENSITIVITY

Chronic cough, unlike protective cough, is a pathologic state that no longer serves a physiologic role [60]. Excessive coughing is a consequence of increased activation of neuronal cough-mediating pathways due to [62; 63]:

- Excessive activation of airway vagal afferent terminals by chemical or mechanical irritants
- Neuroplastic changes in vagal afferent fibers
- Neuroplastic changes in the CNS

Nervous system plasticity, or malleability, dictates that excessive stimulation of peripheral nerve fibers can reshape their excitability through changes in receptor expression; synaptic transmission in the CNS is subsequently altered, further increasing the gain within the system [62].

Chronic cough is most associated with and traditionally considered a symptomatic byproduct of asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, upper airway cough syndrome, and/or GERD, but most patients with these chronic inflammatory diseases do not have chronic cough. Further, cough severity correlates poorly with cough-associated disease severity, and chronic cough can occur in the absence of these conditions as unexplained chronic cough or unexplained chronic cough [19; 20; 64]. This implies individual differences in cough reflex sensitivity and that hypersensitivity of airway sensory nerves may underlie chronic cough [65].

Cough hypersensitivity, defined as repeated episodes of coughing often in response to minimal or no discernible triggers, is common to all persons with chronic cough [66]. Extracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) may play a prominent role in cough hypersensitivity. During cellular injury or inflammation, cells release ATP to alert neighboring cells to damage. In respiratory conditions associated with chronic cough and airway inflammation, such as COPD and asthma, extracellular ATP may be elevated and sensitivity to ATP is heightened [33]. The NK-1 receptor and its ligand, substance P, may also be involved in inducing and maintaining cough hypersensitivity, both peripherally and centrally, either indirectly through inflammatory mediators or directly by stimulating sensory nerve fibers [33].

### Cough Hypersensitivity Syndrome

Cough hypersensitivity syndrome frames chronic cough as a hypersensitivity disorder, akin to chronic pain. Sensitization of vagal afferents by upper or lower airway inflammation leads to increased cough sensitivity to normally anodyne stimuli, the cardinal feature of cough hypersensitivity syndrome [22; 58].

In chronic cough, as in chronic pain, peripheral sensitization is necessary but probably insufficient without central sensitization, which alters the efficacy of neurotransmission in the brainstem and regulation of cough reflex-mediating brain pathways [21]. Patients with cough hypersensitivity or chronic pain have shown abnormal activity in the same midbrain areas that amplify incoming cough (or pain) signals [58; 67; 68].

Chronic pain research substantially informs the conceptual transformation in how chronic cough and refractory chronic cough are understood. Both disorders involve abnormal sensory processing. Taking inspiration from chronic pain, hypertussia describes abnormal excessive coughing in response to airway irritation. Allotussia describes coughing in response to innocuous stimuli. Laryngeal paresthesia describes noxious sensations in the throat or chest associated with an “urge to cough.” Peripheral and central sensitization describe processes that alter cough pathway function [62; 63].

### Peripheral Sensitization

Dysregulation of airway innervation contributes to chronic coughing and is considered the main driver of cough in refractory chronic cough [63].

In airway inflammation, vagal neuron sensitization and plasticity is shown by increased production of neuropeptides, upregulation of glutamate receptors and nociceptive ion channels (e.g., TRPV1), and lower thresholds for activating sensory-evoked cough responses. Neuropeptide upregulation occurs in airway sensory neurons where they are not normally expressed. These effects underlie hypertussia by expanding the cough-evoking stimuli field [21].

For example, bronchoscopic biopsies of patients with chronic cough demonstrated increases in airway epithelial nerve length and branching. The remodeling of these vagal C fibers may

contribute to airway hypersensitivity through increased density of fiber terminals and enlargement of their receptive fields. The shearing forces of chronically coughing and/or the resultant release of inflammatory mediators (e.g., ATP) may explain the increased density of epithelial innervation [69].

Whether the primary stimulus for peripheral sensitization is cellular damage, mechanical stress, or nociceptor stimulation is unclear, as all three can trigger ATP release, activating P2X3 receptors [59].

### Central Mechanisms

While peripheral nervous system dysfunction is the most-described component of cough hypersensitivity, central dysfunction plays a fundamental role [70]. Patients with cough hypersensitivity attempting to voluntarily suppress coughing show reduced activity in dorsomedial prefrontal and anterior mid-cingulate cortices, suggesting diminished ability to inhibit cough reflex activation [66; 67; 71].

Patients with refractory chronic cough demonstrate structural and functional alterations in the left frontal brain regions, including lower gray matter volume and enhanced frontoparietal functional connectivity, which may underlie the higher cough scores, greater psychosocial impact, longer disease duration, and impaired cough inhibition in these patients [72].

Studies of chronic cough in asthma and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis identified increased neuronal sensitivity and subsequent central sensitization via mechanisms of inflammatory-mediated nociceptor sensitization and altered afferent nerve terminal excitability, phenotypic changes in vagal afferent neurons, and central neuroplasticity resulting from increased synaptic signaling from peripheral afferents [73].

The contribution of CNS mechanisms accounts for the efficacy of centrally acting medications (e.g., gabapentin and low-dose morphine) in patients with refractory chronic cough [58].

### Laryngeal Hypersensitivity

A study of refractory/unexplained chronic cough patients with cough hypersensitivity referred to a cough clinic suggests highly prevalent laryngeal dysfunction. The 12-month cohort of all referred patients showed high rates of cough hypersensitivity (100%), multiple cough triggers (75%), laryngeal paresthesias (95%), voice abnormalities (50%), upper airway dyspnea (25%), and laryngeal functional abnormalities on nasoendoscopy (73%). Given the frequent constellation of symptoms typifying laryngeal dysfunction and cough hypersensitivity, the authors suggest designating laryngeal hypersensitivity as a specific cough phenotype [74].

Many refractory chronic cough cases have a sensory neuropathic etiology in the hypopharynx and larynx, with laryngeal hypersensitivity a key mechanism [75]. Pharyngeal/laryngeal sensations (e.g., irritation, tickle, throat-clearing), frequently associated with upper airway cough syndrome and reflux cough, may represent sensory neuron dysfunction of vagal afferents in the upper airways and a phenotype of cough hypersensitivity

syndrome. Dysphonia, dysphagia, dyspnea, and abnormalities of vocal fold motion on laryngoscopy may present with chronic cough as part of the pharyngeal/laryngeal nerve dysfunction seen in cough hypersensitivity syndrome [76].

### Autonomic Dysregulation

There is also evidence of broader autonomic nervous system dysregulation. Compared with healthy controls, patients with chronic cough report more frequent and severe autonomic symptoms in gastrointestinal, orthostatic intolerance, bladder, and pupillomotor domains, primarily in parasympathetically mediated systems, suggesting this population may suffer from dysautonomia. Whether this results from coughing, or if both the cough and dysfunction are part of wider vagal pathology, is unclear [70].

### SUMMARY

Functional changes in TRPV1, TRPA1, and P2X3 nerve channels and the development of peripheral and central sensitization are thought to turn cough from a defensive reflex into a cough hypersensitivity syndrome [77]. Hypersensitivity of the cough reflex and deterioration in central inhibition of the cough explain cough persistence [78].

Cough hypersensitivity syndrome is identified by symptoms of allotussia, hypertussia, and/or laryngeal paresthesia and may improve with the treatment of other treatable traits. If the chronic cough persists, the patient has refractory chronic cough [5].

Owing to nervous system plasticity, sensitization of cough pathways may persist long after resolution of the inciting event, such as acute viral airway infection. These chronic coughs will remain unexplained by diagnostic workups that do not consider cough hypersensitivity [5].

Currently, there are no available methods to identify susceptibility to nervous system plasticity and sensitization, objectively diagnose cough hypersensitivity syndrome, or predict treatable versus refractory chronic cough.

---

## INITIAL EVALUATION OF CHRONIC COUGH

---

When initially encountering a patient with chronic cough, the primary task is to perform a thorough evaluation that seeks potential underlying treatable causes of chronic cough and to treat the cause(s) according to current clinical practice guidelines [99]. These patients typically undergo extensive medical workup and treatment across multiple subspecialties without improvements in their symptoms, and clinicians should try to break the often-repetitive cycle of investigations, empirical treatment, and worry experienced by these patients [75]. The degree to which patients have been investigated varies, so basic tests may be required. Further investigations depend on the individual's presentation [5]. After a diagnosis of refractory chronic cough is made, the therapeutic focus shifts from iden-

tification and treatment of underlying causes to suppression of the hypersensitive cough reflex [99].

The initial evaluation (detailed history and physical examination) accomplishes the key tasks of identifying or ruling out a wide range of diseases underlying the chronic cough and identifying any danger signs that may indicate a diagnosis that needs urgent attention. Any positive findings should guide the initial management [8; 44].

### DEFINITIONS OF COUGH

To eliminate confusion on how to define cough, the American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) and the ERS have standardized the definition of cough according to its duration [10; 100]. Consistently applying these guideline-established definitions is crucial [2].

Thus, the first step in evaluating cough is to determine its duration. This also helps to narrow the differential diagnosis based on the most common underlying causes [10; 100]:

- Acute (<3 weeks) cough:
  - Infectious etiologies, especially with viral causes
  - Exacerbations of chronic diseases (e.g., asthma, COPD)
  - Pneumonia
  - Environmental exposures
- Subacute (3 to 8 weeks) cough:
  - Postinfectious cough
  - Exacerbations of chronic diseases (e.g., asthma, COPD)
  - Upper airway cough syndrome
- Chronic (>8 weeks) cough:
  - Upper airway cough syndrome
  - Asthma
  - Nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis
  - GERD

In chronic cough, allergies are considered secondary to upper airway cough syndrome or asthma.

When cough has lasted three or more weeks and is not postinfectious, some experts recommend not waiting for eight weeks to begin a chronic cough workup [6].

### PATIENT HISTORY

A detailed evaluation is performed and should include the following [2; 5; 6; 8; 10; 100]:

- Presenting symptoms or cough characteristics:
  - Duration
  - Productive or nonproductive
  - Associated symptoms (e.g., rhinorrhea, nasal congestion, sneeze, fever, sputum production,

hemoptysis, dyspnea, weight loss, dysphonia, dysphagia, peripheral edema)

- Prior episodes
- Preceding illnesses (e.g., recent viral infection)
- Clarify whether the patient is coughing, throat-clearing, or both.
- Medical history, including pulmonary and extrapulmonary (e.g., GERD, hypertension, allergic, immune) conditions
- Surgical history, especially involving cardiac, pulmonary, gastrointestinal, and otolaryngological organ systems
- Family history of atopic disease
- Exposure history
  - Tobacco and cannabis smoking or vaping (e.g., electronic cigarettes)
  - Occupational and environmental exposures
  - Recent travel
  - Country of origin
  - Potential sick contacts
- Review current medications for potential iatrogenic cause. Ask about current use of both prescribed and over-the-counter NSAIDs and aspirin.

It is important to always rule out culprit medications by assessing whether the patient is taking an ACE inhibitor antihypertensive, NSAID, sitagliptin, or any medication that may be suspected of inducing the cough. A dry persistent cough from ACE inhibitor use is caused by bradykinin, substance P, and prostaglandins that accumulate in the upper respiratory tract or lung when ACE is inhibited, enhancing the cough reflex. Stopping the drug typically resolves coughing within four weeks or improves it sufficiently for a diagnosis of iatrogenic cough. Switching to angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs) provides antihypertensive control without provoking coughing [6; 101].

## PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

The physical examination of a patient presenting with chronic should assess for nasal congestion, pharyngeal erythema, tonsillar swelling, hoarseness, stridor, wheeze (particularly focal wheeze), crackles, and other adventitious sounds.

## MANDATORY INITIAL TESTS

Initial diagnostic testing should include chest radiography (usually x-ray). Spirometry testing of pulmonary function is recommended pre- and post-bronchodilator to evaluate possible asthma or COPD.

## “RED FLAG” ASSESSMENT OF SERIOUS UNDERLYING CAUSES OF COUGH

In cough of any duration, the initial evaluation should identify any danger signs that may indicate a diagnosis requiring urgent attention. Important danger signs that will need further

evaluation with chest x-ray and possibly laboratory testing and computed tomography (CT) include [44; 100]:

- Systemic symptoms (raises suspicion for chronic infection or rheumatic disease):
  - Fever
  - Night sweats
  - Weight loss
  - Peripheral edema with weight gain
- Hemoptysis, an indicator of infection (e.g., bronchiectasis, lung abscess, tuberculosis), cancer (e.g., lung, bronchus, or larynx), rheumatologic diseases, heart failure, or foreign body inhalation
- Prominent dyspnea, especially at rest or at night, a possible clue to airway obstruction or lung parenchymal disease
- Possible foreign-body inhalation (requires urgent bronchoscopy)
- Smoker older than 45 years of age with a new cough, change in cough, or co-occurring voice disturbance
- Hoarseness
- Trouble swallowing when eating or drinking
- Vomiting
- Recurrent pneumonia
- Abnormal respiratory exam and/or abnormal chest radiograph coinciding with duration of cough

## RECORDS REVIEW

If patients have undergone prior evaluations for upper airway cough syndrome, asthma, GERD, or nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, obtain and review these medical records, including laboratory values, diagnostic reports, and treatments prescribed, to determine if these etiologies have been accurately assessed, diagnosed, and treated. Patients may not have been completely evaluated for these conditions yet diagnosed based on their response (or lack thereof) to empiric trials, which is important to ascertain [2].

## THE ANATOMIC DIAGNOSTIC PROTOCOL (ADP)

Even in current international guidelines that emphasize treatable traits, the anatomic diagnostic protocol (ADP) remains useful in the clinical workup of patients with chronic cough for identifying possible treatable conditions, while recognizing that treatment of the presumed cause(s) does not always improve the cough [19]. Consistent with the ADP, this section organizes chronic cough etiologies and management by their lower airway, upper airway, and gastroesophageal origin.

In nonsmoking, immunocompetent patients not taking an ACE inhibitor and with unremarkable chest radiography, cough lasting longer than eight weeks is considered a symptom of asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, upper airway cough syndrome, GERD, or any combination [6]. These four common causes to consider should be evaluated (*Table 3*).

EVALUATION OF COMMON CAUSES OF CHRONIC COUGH				
Evaluation	Common Causes			
	Asthma	NAEB	UACS	GERD
Spirometry	X			
Bronchodilator reversibility	X			
Bronchoprovocation challenge	X			
Allergy evaluation	X	X	X	
Sputum eosinophilia		X		
Blood eosinophilia		X		
Fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO)		X		
Sinus imaging			X	
Nasopharyngoscopy			X	
Empiric treatment trials <sup>a</sup>	X	X	X	X
<b><sup>a</sup>Diagnostic-Therapeutic Trials</b>				
UACS	First-generation oral antihistamines Inhaled corticosteroids Inhaled ipratropium			
Asthma or NAEB	Inhaled corticosteroids Systemic (oral) corticosteroids Leukotriene receptor antagonist			
GERD	High-dose proton pump inhibitor (PPI) acid-suppression therapy Anti-reflux lifestyle measures Pro-kinetic agent: metoclopramide			
GERD = gastroesophageal reflux disease; NAEB = nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis; UACS = upper airway cough syndrome.				
Source: [1; 82; 83; 100]				Table 3

The ADP has been modified to simplify the clinical workup by emphasizing empiric treatment trials for suspected, but not fully investigated or confirmed, disease [77]. According to the rationale, objective diagnostic methods for upper airway cough syndrome, asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, and GERD are technically demanding, sometimes difficult for patients, and require specialized instruments and personnel. Further, with GERD, discerning causal and temporal relationships between acid reflux and cough is difficult. Thus, sequential empirical therapy is frequently considered and is advised by some before embarking on extensive workup [39; 102]. Because symptom reduction is said to confirm a diagnosis, empiric treatment has been called a diagnostic-therapeutic trial [1].

### DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

If airway disease is suspected, the treatable traits approach is advocated to identify and optimize treatment of pulmonary, extrapulmonary, and behavioral traits (Table 4). Optimizing airway disease treatment is usually the key to managing cough in these patients. Cough hypersensitivity may be a trait in airway disease and require additional specific treatment [5].

Classic asthma, cough-variant asthma, and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis are clinical diagnoses with no clear-cut, absolute diagnostic test available to either rule asthma in or out as the cause of a patient’s chronic cough [10]. In a stepwise diagnostic approach, initial abnormal lung function testing suggests classic asthma or COPD; normal testing is inclusive of cough-variant asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, or chronic bronchitis. Absence of bronchial hyperreactivity to methacholine challenge in patients with normal physical exam and spirometry findings suggests nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis. Negative airway responsiveness can exclude cough-variant asthma. Abnormal spirometry contraindicates bronchial challenge testing [104].

### Lung Function Tests

Spirometry can reveal airflow obstruction, variability (>20%) in peak expiratory flow measurements, or an improvement in threshold testing (FEV1 >12%, improvement from baseline of >200 mL) in response to bronchodilators (b-2 agonists). Abnormal spirometry can be seen in patients with classic asthma and COPD, but not cough-variant asthma or nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis [104].

## AIRWAY INVESTIGATIONS IN PATIENTS WITH CHRONIC COUGH

Investigation	Description	Utility
<b>Lower Airway</b>		
Chest radiograph	Plain radiograph of the chest from anterior or posterior aspect (occasionally lateral view)	<b>Mandatory.</b> Abnormal findings should be pursued first as potential cause of chronic cough.
Spirometry	Maximal inhalation and exhalation into a spirometer measures forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV1) and forced vital capacity (FVC)	<b>Mandatory</b> test for airflow obstruction. FEV1 $\leq$ 80% or FEV1/FVC ratio $<$ 70% predicted for age and sex prompts reversibility testing.
Bronchodilator reversibility test	Pre- and post-bronchodilator spirometry in patients with obstructive airflow to measure change 10 to 15 minutes after SABA (e.g., albuterol)	Increase in FEV1 $\geq$ 12%, or $\geq$ 200 mL, after SABA indicates reversibility. Ideally, perform before starting asthma therapy.
Fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO)	Measurement of nitric oxide levels in exhaled breath to indicate eosinophilic airway inflammation	Increased FeNO levels correlate with type 2 airway inflammation in asthma or nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis. High FeNO ( $>$ 30 ppb) may predict corticosteroids response.
Induced airway sputum	Patient inhales nebulized hypertonic saline (3% to 5%), inducing sputum expectoration for differential cell count analysis.	The criterion standard assessment of eosinophilic airway, routinely used in cough clinics but not widely adopted
Bronchial challenge/provocation test	Patient inhales histamine or methacholine; a $\geq$ 20% drop in FEV1 confirms bronchial hyperresponsiveness (positive test).	Positive test with isolated cough and normal spirometry indicates an anti-asthma therapy trial. A negative test makes asthma improbable.
Chest computed tomography (CT)	Provides better resolution of lung parenchymal and mediastinal structures than chest x-ray	In productive cough, may identify early lung fibrosis or confirm bronchiectasis. Low utility in chronic cough with normal physical exam and chest x-ray.
Bronchoscopy (fiberoptic)	Allows direct visualization of the upper and lower airways and bronchoalveolar lavage to obtain specimens	<b>Mandatory</b> in all patients with suspected inhaled foreign body. Endobronchial appearance typically normal in chronic cough with normal chest x-ray.
<b>Upper Airway</b>		
Laryngoscopy (fiberoptic)	Allows direct inspection of laryngopharyngeal area including epiglottis and vocal cords	Typically unremarkable, but may reveal laryngopharyngeal reflux. Suspected laryngeal dysfunction prompts challenge laryngoscopy.
Sinus CT imaging	Visualizes the frontal, ethmoid, and maxillary sinuses and nasal passages	May provide evidence of sinus opacification or mucosal thickening. Unclear role in patients with chronic cough without nasal symptoms.
<b>Other</b>		
Peripheral blood eosinophil count	Measures absolute number or relative percentage of eosinophils in peripheral blood	May help predict corticosteroid response in respiratory diseases; utility in chronic cough not established.
ppb = parts per billion, SABA = short-acting beta-agonist.		
Source: [10; 19; 103]		Table 4

### Spirometry

An FEV1/forced vital capacity (FVC) ratio of <70% (or below the lower limit of normal, if available) is a positive test for obstructive airway disease (obstructive spirometry) [103].

### Bronchodilator Reversibility Test

Bronchodilator reversibility testing is recommended in patients with obstructive spirometry (FEV1/FVC ratio <70%). Following short-acting beta-agonist bronchodilator administration, improvement in FEV1 of  $\geq 12\%$ , together with an increase in volume of  $\geq 200$  mL, is a positive test [103].

### Airway Inflammation Measures

Asthma is often, but not always, mediated by eosinophilic inflammation, and measurement of airway inflammation has clinical utility because eosinophilic airway inflammation is associated with favorable inhaled corticosteroid response. Fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) levels and peripheral blood eosinophil count indirectly estimate airway eosinophilia [5; 10; 84].

Significant (>3%) sputum eosinophilia is the criterion standard for eosinophilic inflammation, but sputum eosinophilia may not be routinely available. Blood eosinophil count is simple and readily available but has diurnal and seasonal variability so multiple assessments should be performed. A blood eosinophil count  $>0.3$  cells/mcL may indicate eosinophilic airway inflammation.

FeNO is a surrogate marker of eosinophilic airway inflammation and inhaled corticosteroid response in classic asthma. FeNO has a relatively high specificity in predicting asthma among patients with chronic cough, but a cut-off level for diagnosis lacks consensus. Elevated FeNO levels (>40 ppb) support a diagnosis of asthma with typical symptoms, but the usefulness in predicting inhaled corticosteroid response in chronic cough is uncertain [5].

A meta-analysis of studies in patients with chronic cough reported significantly higher inhaled corticosteroid response rates in high (>25 ppb) compared with low FeNO (87.4% vs. 46.3%) [105]. After three weeks of high-dose inhaled corticosteroids, the response rate (defined as a  $\geq 1.3$ -point increase in LCQ) was 68% in patients with high FeNO and no other apparent etiology; LCQ scores and FeNO significantly improved. However, improvements in cough were unrelated to changes in FeNO levels, challenging their direct mechanistic link [106]. Thus, an inhaled corticosteroid trial should be prompted with FeNO >25 ppb but avoided with FeNO <25 ppb unless other factors suggest eosinophilic airway disease [5]. Treatment decisions should not solely hinge on FeNO values [6].

### Airway Hyper-Reactivity Measures

In patients with negative physical examination and spirometry findings, bronchial challenge testing (e.g., methacholine) should be performed to confirm airway hyper-reactivity consistent with symptomatic asthma [84]. Bronchial challenge test-

ing is recommended in patients with reactive airway diseases to help diagnosis of asthma and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis as a cause of chronic cough. A negative bronchial challenge test (defined as an FEV1 decrease of <20% at the highest methacholine challenge dose [10 mg/mL]) has a high negative predictive value of asthma as an etiological diagnosis in chronic cough [104].

Airway eosinophilic inflammation can be present in both asthma and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis but can be distinguished by a methacholine inhalational challenge (positive in asthma, negative in nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis) because substantially more mast cells localize in the smooth muscle layer in asthma compared with nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis [6].

---

## IDENTIFICATION AND MANAGEMENT OF UNDERLYING ETIOLOGIES

---

The concept that chronic cough is a disease in its own right has only recently gained acceptance. Different phenotypes of this condition are recognized (e.g., asthmatic cough, reflux cough), but the underlying pathology involves hypersensitivity of the vagus nerve and its central projections. The paradigm of asthma, GERD, and postnasal drip causing the symptom of chronic cough was promulgated from the 1980s onwards. However, after it became apparent that many patients suffering from chronic cough with a particular disease label (e.g., asthma, GERD) failed to respond to treatments for that condition, clinical practice guidance changed [79].

Systematic evaluation and treatment guidelines for chronic cough, based on the anatomic locations of receptors and afferent pathways in the cough reflex, first appeared in 1977 [80]. Using such an approach was estimated to determine the cause of chronic cough in 100% of patients, and the subsequent cause-specific treatment was reportedly almost always successful. Termed the ADP, this stepwise diagnostic approach involves a targeted patient history and physical examination to investigate the possible cause/s of their cough. This information is then used to initiate a stepwise treatment approach until resolution of the cough symptoms [77].

The ACCP recommended the ADP in their comprehensive clinical practice guideline on cough in 1998 and in 2006 [81; 82]. More recent ACCP guidelines evaluate ADP components and provide treatment recommendations on the major causes of cough, including chronic cough due to GERD in 2016, asthma and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis in 2020, stable chronic bronchitis in 2020, and unexplained/refractory chronic cough in 2016 [77; 83; 84; 85; 86].

However, the understanding of chronic cough has evolved beyond the ADP, especially since 2020 with incorporation of cough hypersensitivity and the treatable traits approach into clinical practice guidelines and endotyping of many cough-associated chronic inflammatory conditions. These knowledge



advances are not efficiently reaching U.S. clinicians, because ACCP guidelines on chronic cough have not kept pace. While the ADP remains an important structure of the diagnostic workup for chronic cough patients, its assumptions have been supplanted in recent international chronic cough guidelines.

### THE “TREATABLE TRAITS” APPROACH IN CHRONIC AIRWAY DISEASES

In the late 19th century, Sir William Osler established the modern approach to the diagnosis and treatment of disease, based on the principal organ system where symptoms and signs manifest, with some biological correlates. The Oslerian paradigm of disease classification using diagnostic categories has been in use for more than 100 years, with substantial merit, but limitations of the diagnostic label approach have become evident [16].

As noted, in 2016, the treatable traits approach was introduced to pulmonary medicine to overcome the shortcomings of the diagnostic label approach, which does not consider the biological complexity of airway diseases, the distinct endotypes present in each patient, or common patterns of disease such as chronic cough [14; 17].

The treatable traits approach addresses the complexity of chronic airway diseases as heterogeneous, frequently overlapping, and often comorbid conditions. In clinical trials of patients with asthma and COPD, the treatable traits approach led to significantly greater improvements in health-related quality of life and biological outcomes and reductions in primary care visits (compared with usual care) [16].

A trait is defined as clinically relevant, measurable, and treatable. These traits can be identified by their phenotypes and/or endotypes in pulmonary, extrapulmonary, and behavioral/environmental domains, and can coexist, interact, and change over time in the same patient. The treatable traits approach is agnostic to the traditional diagnostic labels of asthma or COPD and can be used in any patient with airway disease. The treatable traits approach often extends beyond the diagnostic label itself to find more treatment targets, especially in complex patients with suboptimal response to conventional guideline-based treatment [87; 88]. In other words, the treatable traits approach represents a transdiagnostic model.

In asthma, many extrapulmonary traits present as connected comorbidities, meaning they coexist with asthma and may share mechanisms. Extrapulmonary traits (e.g., chronic rhinosinusitis, GERD, anxiety, atopic dermatitis) are clinically relevant as they predict poor outcomes, confound the management of asthma, and are treatable themselves. Through multidimensional assessment of pulmonary, extrapulmonary, and behavioral/environmental domains, the treatable traits approach identifies and targets extrapulmonary traits with effective treatments, improving both asthma and the comorbidity [89].

In the 1970s, the ADP extended the Oslerian classification system to cough, addressing the three common causes (asthma, postnasal drip, reflux) arising from three different anatomical

areas. Refined to four causes (asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, upper airway cough syndrome, and GERD), this approach benefitted many patients, but in 30% to 40% of these patients, the coughing continues or a presumed cause cannot be identified [16; 90]. In 2023, COPD was added to become a fifth common potential underlying cause of chronic cough [24].

Chronic cough is associated with airway and reflux diseases that are heterogeneous, frequently overlapping, and often comorbid, the same characteristics the treatable traits approach addresses [14; 17]. For instance, asthma is a clinical syndrome with varying phenotypes and endotypes, rather than a single disease entity. COPD is an umbrella term encompassing different respiratory conditions sharing airflow obstruction. Asthma is not always eosinophilic, and GERD is not necessarily acidic [15]. Despite its relatively recent appearance, the treatable traits paradigm is endorsed throughout pulmonary medicine and in post-2019 (international) clinical practice guidelines on chronic cough.

### ENDOTYPES OF COUGH-RELATED CHRONIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASES

A phenotype is an observed characteristic resulting from interactions between genotype and environment. An endotype is a specific biological pathway that forms the basis of observable traits in the phenotype [56].

In the 2016 treatable traits paper, the authors broadly call for a shift away from the classical Oslerian top-to-bottom approach (i.e., from symptoms to mechanisms) to reclassifying airway diseases bottom-up, by linking causal molecular pathways (i.e., endotypes) to disease phenotypes (i.e., from molecules to symptoms) [14].

This has been unfolding in allergy and immunology, and these advances are highly relevant to pulmonary medicine and to chronic cough. For instance, the chronic inflammatory diseases of asthma, allergic rhinitis, chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyposis, eosinophilic esophagitis, and atopic dermatitis, are now defined by a constellation of symptoms that may result from different pathological mechanisms and not as homogeneous diseases [91].

The discovery of new endotypes in allergic and immune diseases has prompted the transition from symptom-focused disease descriptions to biomarkers and pathogenetic pathways—from phenotypes to endotypes [91]. The imperative for transitioning to endotypes is heightened by FDA approval of several biologicals that target specific inflammatory pathways important in disease pathophysiology [92]. These include the most common chronic cough-associated disorders.

Immune dysregulation has been endotyped as type 1, type 2, and type 3 responses. Asthma has been commonly dichotomized as type 2 and non-type 2. Type 2 inflammation is the best-characterized endotype [91; 93; 94; 95].

Type 2 inflammation involves eosinophils as the key players, which contribute to chronic allergic inflammation by producing cytokines, or interleukins (IL), with specific roles in the inflammatory pathway. IL-5 promotes eosinophil recruitment to sites of inflammation. IL-4 and IL-13 promote immunoglobulin E (IgE) production and immune cell trafficking to tissue, driving and sustaining the type 2 response, tissue damage, and chronic inflammation. IL-31 activates binding sites on sensory neurons, which release CGRP and nerve growth factor, causing neurogenic inflammation. In non-type 2 asthma, Th2 cells migrate to asthmatic bronchi and change their phenotype to produce T1 effector cytokines, such as interferon- $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ) and tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$  (TNF- $\alpha$ ), inducing bronchial epithelial apoptosis and remodeling. TNF- $\alpha$  promotes neutrophilic inflammation, which correlates with sputum TNF- $\alpha$  levels in patients with severe asthma. In type 3 inflammation, innate lymphoid cells type 3 (ILC3), T helper lymphocyte type 17 (Th17), and Th22 cells produce cytokines IL-17, IL-22, and IL-23. This mechanism is particularly relevant in the pathogenesis of chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps and neutrophilic asthma [91; 93; 94; 95].

In 2023, the European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) published an updated disease taxonomy with advances in biomarkers, pathogenetic and metabolic pathways, and pathogenic genetic variants. This expanded nomenclature characterizes the following types with relevance to chronic cough [91].

#### **Type V: Epithelial Barrier Defect**

The epithelial barrier defect and microbial dysbiosis lead to dysregulation of the immune response, including extensive activation and release of inflammatory cytokines, chemokines and inflammatory mediators (histamine, leukotrienes, reactive oxygen species). The sequence of events eventually leads to tissue damage in asthma, chronic allergic rhinitis, chronic rhinosinusitis, and chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps.

#### **Type VI: Metabolic-Induced Immune Dysregulation**

Obesity is a distinguishing variable for clustering and classifying asthma subtypes, and the number of obese patients with asthma has risen dramatically with increasing obesity rates. The obese asthmatic, more likely to be female with adult-onset asthma and to become corticosteroid resistant, has a higher risk of being hospitalized and more frequently presents with severe disease. Higher body mass index (BMI) is associated with increased circulating inflammatory mediators, blood neutrophils, and eosinophils. An additive effect of asthma and obesity further increases inflammatory mediators and airway inflammation.

An asthma endotype introduced in 2020, IL-6-high asthma, is characterized by elevated plasma IL-6 levels, increased markers of systemic inflammation, metabolic dysfunction, and obesity [96].

#### **Type VII: Inflammatory Drug Reactions**

These idiosyncratic reactions include hypersensitivity to non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and phenotypes such as NSAIDs-exacerbated respiratory disease in patients with asthma and/or chronic rhinosinusitis  $\pm$  nasal polyposis. NSAIDs-exacerbated respiratory disease is a chronic inflammatory condition characterized by the triad of asthma, recurrent nasal polyps and hypersensitivity to NSAIDs/aspirin. In the underlying mechanism, cyclooxygenase (COX)-1 inhibition releases eicosanoid mediators, causing bronchoconstriction, increased vascular permeability, mucus production and recruitment of inflammatory cells.

These advances in endotyping chronic inflammatory diseases associated with chronic cough have not yet appeared in practice guidelines on chronic cough, with the exception of eosinophilic airway inflammation, but this science is being translated into practice. For example, cough is the most troublesome symptom for patients with asthma. Older patients with asthma and chronic cough show worse clinical outcomes in asthma control, quality of life, and airway obstruction, and more frequent moderate-to-severe exacerbations, partly explained by the interaction of chronic coughing with aging [97]. Non-type 2 inflammation (e.g., increased neutrophils) is associated with cough in older patients with asthma with chronic cough. Interferon- $\gamma$  is a non-type 2 biomarker that enhances cough reflex sensitivity by inducing calcium influx in vagal sensory neurons and is associated with increased cough in patients with refractory chronic cough. Older patients with asthma show increased levels of sputum IFN- $\gamma$ . Non-type 2 inflammation (i.e., neutrophils and IFN- $\gamma$ ) is also associated with reduced inhaled corticosteroid response [54; 97; 98].

---

## **TREATMENT**

---

### **CHRONIC AIRWAY INFLAMMATION**

Treatment of chronic airway inflammation includes inhaled corticosteroids, long-acting beta-agonists, long-acting muscarinic antagonists, leukotriene receptor antagonists, systemic corticosteroids, and biologicals. Confirmation that chronic cough is due to asthma (or another chronic cough-associated condition) requires a beneficial response to therapy for asthma, as patients with asthma can also have chronic cough due to non-asthmatic causes [44].

For chronic cough due to cough-variant asthma or nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, the ACCP recommends inhaled corticosteroids as first-line treatment [84]. With incomplete response, the inhaled corticosteroid dose should be escalated and adding a leukotriene receptor antagonist should be considered. Other causes of cough should be reconsidered as well. For cough-variant asthma, adding beta-agonists should be considered.

In patients with chronic cough in asthma, the first-line treatment is inhaled corticosteroid with or without long-acting beta-agonist [6]. A leukotriene receptor antagonist or long-acting muscarinic antagonist may be added in for those who do not fully respond to initial treatment. Whether biologics can treat chronic cough related to asthma has not been studied.

When an offending allergen cannot be identified or avoided, chronic cough associated with nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis should be treated with an inhaled corticosteroid. Second-line therapy calls for escalation of the inhaled corticosteroid dose; if response remains incomplete, the patient should be assessed for other causes of cough and a trial of leukotriene receptor antagonist initiated. Occasionally, systemic corticosteroids may be needed.

Tiotropium may be another therapeutic option. In 17 patients with chronic asthmatic cough refractory to inhaled corticosteroid/long-acting beta-agonist, four to eight weeks of tiotropium (5 mcg/day) significantly improved cough reflex sensitivity and cough severity in a subgroup of 11 patients [107]. These results were replicated in a randomized comparison to theophylline 400 mg/day over four weeks. Both drugs improved cough severity and cough-specific quality of life. Tiotropium decreased cough reflex sensitivity, which correlated with changes in cough severity, and higher baseline cough reflex sensitivity predicted greater tiotropium response. The authors conclude that tiotropium may modulate cough reflex sensitivity to alleviate chronic cough in asthma refractory to inhaled corticosteroid/long-acting beta-agonist [108].

### EMPIRIC TREATMENT APPROACH

Empiric treatment of chronic cough is systematically directed at the four most common causes of cough, starting with upper airway cough syndrome. In its 2006 guideline, the ACCP states that therapy should be given in sequential and additive steps, because more than one cause of cough may be present [82]. Initial empiric treatment should begin with an oral first-generation antihistamine/decongestant.

If chronic cough persists after treatment for upper airway cough syndrome, asthma as the possible cause should be worked up next. If spirometry does not indicate reversible airflow obstruction, bronchoprovocation testing is performed in the evaluation for asthma.

With the diagnoses of upper airway cough syndrome and asthma ruled out or treated without the elimination of cough, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis should be considered next, with a properly performed induced sputum test for eosinophils. In most patients with suspected cough due to asthma, a bronchoprovocation challenge should be performed and, if the result is positive, some combination of inhaled corticosteroids, inhaled beta-agonists, and/or oral leukotriene inhibitors should be administered.

In patients whose cough responds only partially or not at all to interventions for upper airway cough syndrome and asthma or nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, treatment for GERD

should be instituted next. In patients with cough whose condition remains undiagnosed after all of these conditions has been worked up, referral to a cough specialist is indicated.

When the cause of chronic cough is identified or suspected, there are two options [26; 44; 57; 109]. The first is to pursue one diagnostic and treatment path at a time; with incomplete response of the cough to one line of therapy, adding therapy for the next most likely diagnosis is reasonable. The second option in patients with more than one suspected cause and a cough that is especially disruptive is to empirically treat or evaluate the likely causes simultaneously. After the cough resolves, treatments can be stopped sequentially, starting with the least likely to have been helpful, observing the patient for any return of cough.

### BEHAVIORAL TREATABLE TRAITS

Nonadherence and poor inhalation technique strongly influence outcomes in airway disease. Despite their critical importance, the proportion of patients with poor technique is high, unimproved over the past 40 years, and often unaddressed by clinicians. These behavioral treatable traits can be improved using strategies such as patient-centered communication, motivational interviewing, shared decision-making, and simplification of drug regimens; and should be assessed in every follow-up visit [110].

Smoking cessation improves cough by resolving chronic bronchitis. Nicotine suppresses the cough reflex, and nicotine withdrawal due to smoking cessation may enhance cough hypersensitivity; hence, patients may experience more coughing for a period after quitting. This can be attenuated and quit rates improved by using nicotine replacement [5].

### LOWER AIRWAY ETIOLOGIES OF CHRONIC COUGH AND MANAGEMENT

Lower airway diseases commonly associated with chronic cough are classic asthma, cough-variant asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, and COPD [20].

Chronic cough is a central feature that develops in diverse pulmonary pathologies, such as asthma (an inflammatory airway disease) and idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (an alveolar fibrosing disease), highlighting the significant role of dysregulated cough pathways in lung disease phenotypes [60]. Chronic cough prevalences have been reported for asthma (8% to 58%), COPD (10% to 74%), bronchiectasis (82% to 98%), interstitial lung disease (50% to 89%) and sarcoidosis (3% to 64%); in all five diseases, patients demonstrate cough reflex hypersensitivity, a cardinal feature of cough hypersensitivity syndrome [111].

Presence of chronic cough generally predicts impaired health status and more severe respiratory disease and is associated with greater symptom burden and disease severity in asthma, COPD, bronchiectasis, and interstitial lung disease. It has also been linked to greater exacerbations in asthma and bronchiectasis and increased mortality and lung transplantation in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis [111].

### Asthma and Nonasthmatic Eosinophilic Bronchitis

Asthma is a complex, chronic airway inflammatory disease of bronchial hyper-responsiveness, intermittent airflow obstruction, and symptoms of wheeze and dyspnea that impacts 26 million people in the United States, results in approximately 10,000 deaths annually, incurs an estimated \$56 billion annually in medical care and lost productivity costs, and accounts for cough in 24% to 32% of adult nonsmokers with chronic cough [84; 112; 113]. Asthma prevalence has increased with rising obesity rates. Obesity often precedes an asthma diagnosis, making it an important modifiable risk factor (or treatable trait) [5; 113].

In atopic asthma, the most common type (affecting approximately 50% of adults with asthma), allergens trigger innate and adaptive immune activity, releasing inflammatory mediators such as histamine, prostaglandins, and leukotrienes that promote bronchoconstriction and cough [20; 114]. Classic asthma describes symptoms of wheezing, chest tightness, and dyspnea. In these patients, immune response to allergen exposure results in airway inflammation, airflow obstruction, and characteristic symptoms. Increased mucous secretions in narrowing airways induce cough [31; 112].

Cough-variant asthma, in contrast, presents with persistent cough as the primary or only symptom. Cough receptor density is highest in the proximal airways, decreasing as the airways get smaller. In cough-variant asthma, inflammation is primarily in the proximal airways, where cough is stimulated, and less so distally, where inflammation and narrowing cause wheezing and dyspnea in classic asthma [31; 56]. Some have suggested that asthma-variant cough is a more appropriate term than cough-variant asthma, given that cough hypersensitivity symptoms are the chief complaints, while asthmatic features act as triggers and treatable traits of chronic cough in these patients [115].

Nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis was first described in 1989 as corticosteroid-responsive chronic cough in nonsmokers with airway eosinophilia, but without variable airway obstruction or bronchial hyper-responsiveness [116]. Nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis accounts for 10% to 30% of specialist referrals for chronic cough, but nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis prevalence is uncertain, as its diagnosis requires assessment of eosinophilic airway inflammation [44; 84; 117]. In nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, patients have chronic cough, no symptoms or evidence of variable airflow obstruction, sputum eosinophilia, and normal bronchial provocation tests [56; 117].

Chronic cough in asthma is mechanistically complex, involving IgE or non-IgE mediated eosinophilic airway (i.e., atopic or nonatopic) inflammation, abnormal neuromechanical properties of the lungs, and presence of cough reflex hypersensitivity independently of airway eosinophilia or bronchial hyper-responsiveness [20].

Nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis and asthma share airway eosinophilia and similar basal membrane thickening, but inflammatory mast cells primarily infiltrate the superficial airway epithelium in nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis versus airway smooth muscle in asthma. Along with lower IL-13 expression in nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, this partially explains bronchitis and cough with normal airway responsiveness in nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis [116; 118]. Nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis lacks the airway hyper-responsiveness of cough-variant asthma, but both share atopic features of eosinophilia and airway inflammation [109].

Eosinophilic airway inflammation in cough-variant asthma is linked to more severe disease. Cough-variant asthma may be a precursor of classic asthma, and both cough phenotypes can manifest overlapping symptoms, airway inflammation, and bronchial hyper-responsiveness [20]. Chronic dry cough, eosinophilic inflammation, and chronic airflow obstruction can present in both cough-variant asthma and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis [56].

### Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)

COPD comprises several lung diseases, including emphysema and chronic bronchitis, with persistent and usually progressive airflow limitation associated with an enhanced chronic inflammatory response in the airways and lungs. Exacerbations and comorbidities contribute to the overall severity, while airway and systemic inflammation in COPD is related to disease progression and mortality [119; 120].

In the United States, 14.2 million adults had diagnosed COPD in 2021, of whom 25% were never-smokers, and COPD accounted for 354,000 deaths in 2020 [121; 122]. Among patients with COPD, 70% experience persistent cough and many consider it extremely severe and impairing [64].

Chronic bronchitis describes productive cough on most days of the week for at least three months total duration in two successive years. Chronic obstructive bronchitis is chronic bronchitis with spirometric evidence of airflow obstruction. Chronic asthmatic bronchitis is a similar condition with chronic productive cough, wheezing, and partially reversible airflow obstruction mostly found in smokers with a history of asthma [123].

Emphysema is defined as the permanent enlargement and damage of the lung air sacs with destruction of the airspace walls, causing symptoms of breathlessness. Emphysema can exist without airflow obstruction but is more common in patients with moderate or severe airflow obstruction [119].

COPD manifests as productive cough with airflow limitation and occasional bronchial hyper-responsiveness [20]. COPD and asthma share symptoms of cough, wheeze, and difficulty breathing. The blurred distinction between chronic obstructive bronchitis and chronic asthmatic bronchitis is termed asthma-COPD overlap [123].

Cigarette smoking is the primary risk factor, but only 15% of smokers develop clinically apparent COPD. Smokers with pre-existing airway reactivity, even in the absence of clinical asthma, have greater risk of developing COPD. Inflammation in the large and small airways can persist after smoking cessation. The genetic disorder alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency is an important cause of emphysema in nonsmokers and markedly increases susceptibility to COPD in smokers [120; 123].

### Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis is an interstitial lung disease, a group of pulmonary disorders characterized by inflammation and/or fibrosis of the lung parenchyma associated with progressive dyspnea frequently resulting in end-stage respiratory failure. Interstitial lung disease affects 650,000 people and causes 25,000 to 30,000 deaths per year in the United States [124].

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, the most common interstitial lung disease accounting for 35% to 61% of all patients, is a chronic, progressive, invariably fatal fibrotic lung disease [111; 124]. Despite approvals of two antifibrotic therapies, the five-year survival rate remains 25%, far worse than many common cancers. Pharmacotherapies slow the disease progression, but none address the significant symptoms of chronic cough, fatigue, and dyspnea suffered by 85% to 95% of patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis [125].

Chronic cough in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis predicts disease progression and mortality, is as distressing as breathlessness for patients, and remains one of the most difficult symptoms to control [64; 125]. Among 1,447 patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis cough, every 1-point decrease in LCQ score increased the risk of respiratory-related hospitalization by 6.5%, death by 7.4%, and lung transplantation by 8.7% over 12 months. Worse cough-specific quality of life independently associated with increased risk of respiratory hospitalization, death, and lung transplantation [126].

Two breakthrough studies demonstrated that low-dose morphine and nalbuphine can safely decrease coughing in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis patients, as will be described later in this course.

### Bronchiectasis

Bronchiectasis is a heterogenous disorder characterized by infection, airway inflammation, failure of mucociliary clearance, and airway structural damage. Absolute suppression of cough is not recommended because bronchiectasis is a suppurative condition with an increased risk of infection. However, much of the cough exceeds what is physiologically needed for sputum clearance and is thus maladaptive or pathological [111]. Cough is a central clinical feature of bronchiectasis that contributes to impaired health status and may be an early indicator of disease exacerbation, but it is almost never evaluated [64].

## UPPER AIRWAY ETIOLOGIES OF CHRONIC COUGH AND THEIR MANAGEMENT

In upper airway cough syndrome, diverse chronic infectious, inflammatory, or neurogenic upper airway diseases induce chronic cough [20; 127]. While upper airway cough syndrome lacks a uniform definition, its prevalence in chronic cough patients is probably comparable to other major causes like asthma and GERD; in some studies, it is the first or second leading cause [39; 127].

Rhinitis, comprising most chronic upper airway diseases in upper airway cough syndrome, has a lifetime prevalence up to 33% in the United States [6]. Nasal mucosa inflammation due to allergic or non-allergic cause leads to mucus secretion, sneezing, nasal pruritus, and postnasal drip that irritates the airways and stimulates coughing [31]. In chronic rhinitis, these symptoms persist at least three months, inducing nasal obstruction and increased nasal discharge [119].

Rhinitis has numerous phenotypes and the nomenclature is not straightforward (**Table 5**). Allergic rhinitis requires immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated sensitization to an allergen exposure [6]. Chronic cough in patients with allergic rhinitis is often related to undiagnosed asthma or nonspecific bronchial hyperreactivity. Bronchial biopsy studies of patients with allergic rhinitis without asthma have shown inflammatory cell infiltration and active structural remodeling of the lower airways similar to that of patients with asthma, thereby potentially contributing to cough in these patients [128].

Chronic nonallergic rhinitis syndromes include chronic nonallergic rhinitis, nonallergic rhinitis with eosinophilia syndrome (NARES), atrophic rhinitis, and drug-induced rhinitis; nonallergic rhinitis accounts for up to 80% of cases [129]. Nonallergic rhinitis phenotypes include [6]:

- Vasomotor
- Irritant
- Infectious
- GERD-associated
- Chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyposis

Rhinosinusitis is preferred to sinusitis because purulent sinus disease without similar rhinitis is rare [130].

Chronic rhinosinusitis is an inflammatory disease of the sinonasal mucosal lining secondary to infectious and allergic etiology, with symptoms of anosmia, nasal obstruction, thick nasal drainage, and facial pressure [92]. Retention of sinus secretions, the key event in chronic rhinosinusitis development, fosters infection and is caused by obstruction or narrowing of sinus ostia, mucociliary dysfunction, or altered mucus composition; 90% of sinus infections involve the maxillary sinus [119]. Cough, one of the important symptoms of chronic rhinosinusitis, occurs in 1% to 5% of U.S. adults [131].

DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF RHINITIS PHENOTYPES				
Rhinitis Phenotype	Primary Symptoms	Associated Features	More Responsive to	Less Responsive to
Allergic	Sneezing, nasal pruritis, clear rhinitis	Ocular itching, wheezing, atopic dermatitis	INCS, INAH, FGAH, SGAH, SCS, AIT	Decongestants, ABX
Nonallergic noninfectious	Intermittent congestion, clear rhinitis	Physical triggers (temperature changes, food, irritants)	INCA, INAH, INAC	FGAH, SGAH, SCS, AIT, ABX
GERD-associated	Postnasal drip, throat clearing	Epigastric pain, heartburn, dysphagia	GERD diet and lifestyle changes, INAC	FGAH, SGAH, INCS, INAH, SCS, ABX, AIT
Chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyposis	Anosmia/hyposmia, unremitting congestion, facial pain/pressure	Wheezing, NSAID hypersensitivity	SCS, biologics, intermittent INCS	FGAH, SGAH, INAH
Infectious	Acute onset, sinus pressure, nasal congestion with purulent discharge	Viral prodrome, episodic nature lasting <2 weeks	Saline nasal lavage, INAH, decongestants, INAC	FGAH, SGAH, INCS, SCS, ABX, AIT
ABX = antibiotics; AIT = allergen immunotherapy; FGAH = first-generation oral antihistamines; GERD = gastroesophageal reflux disease; INAC = intranasal anticholinergics; INAH = intranasal antihistamines; INCS = intranasal corticosteroids, SCS = systemic corticosteroids; SGAH = second-generation oral antihistamines.				
Source: [6]				Table 5

Chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyposis, representing up to 20% of chronic rhinosinusitis cases, is more debilitating than the phenotype without nasal polyposis. Comorbidities in chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps are asthma (55% to 56%), allergy (12% to 77%), and allergic rhinitis (17% to 76%). Asthma with nasal polyps is harder to control and more prone to severe exacerbations [92; 93].

Chronic cough pathogenesis in upper airway cough syndrome was previously tied to postnasal drip, because the nose and sinuses lack vagal sensory innervation. However, only a minority of patients with postnasal drip have chronic cough, some patients with upper airway cough syndrome do not have postnasal drip, and the pathophysiology is more complex [11; 127].

In chronic rhinitis and rhinosinusitis, inflammatory mediators are transmitted via glossopharyngeal and vagal receptors in the pharynx and larynx, and via afferent fibers of the trigeminal nerve, sensitizing the cough reflex centrally [11]. Direct irritation of nasolaryngeal mucosa and stimulation of vagal afferents by postnasal drip lead to hematogenous spread of inflammatory mediators and neurogenic or systemic communication between upper and lower airways, resulting in airway sensory nerve inflammation, cough reflex hypersensitivity, and chronic cough [10; 39].

Convergence of trigeminal and vagal afferents in central cough pathways provides a mechanistic/neuronal link between upper airway disease and the development of cough hypersensitivity [5]. In general, upper airway diseases lead to chronic cough

only if the cough reflex becomes hypersensitive; therefore, they are generally considered a trigger rather than a cause of chronic cough [11].

In 2024, nonallergic rhinopathy was introduced to replace vasomotor rhinitis as the term describing 80% of the larger nonallergic rhinitis category, prompted by evidence that neuroinflammation and TRPV1 receptor activation play important roles, rather than blood vessels. TRPV1 also contributes to nasal hyper-reactivity in allergic rhinitis, an entity called mixed rhinitis. The management of nonallergic rhinitis requires the correct diagnosis; rhinopathy draws attention to the underlying neuro-immune endotype [129; 132].

Chronic cough is triggered in many patients with chronic upper airway disease (usually allergic rhinitis or chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyps) with common symptoms and signs of postnasal drip, compulsive throat-clearing, nasal stuffiness, globus feeling, headache/facial pain, loss of smell and taste, recurrent hoarseness, and cobblestone appearance of the pharyngeal mucosa on inspection [11]. The most commonly used tool is the SinoNasal Outcome Test (SNOT) [92].

With numerous symptoms and unclear diagnostic criteria, upper airway cough syndrome diagnosis has been based on first-generation oral antihistamine response, which may have central antitussive effects. Upper airway and other airway disease is frequent in patients with chronic cough, making it unclear whether coughing arises from upper or lower airways [5].

A large case series found allergic rhinitis, classic asthma, chronic rhinosinusitis, and nasal polyposis in 46%, 31%, 12%, and 9% of patients with chronic cough, respectively. The high predictive value for concomitant asthma in upper airway cough syndrome calls for investigating lower airway pathology in chronic cough of upper airway origin [20].

Rhinitis is a principal contributor to upper airway cough syndrome. The lengthy differential diagnosis of rhinitis in upper airway cough syndrome includes both allergic and nonallergic diseases; many patients have a combination of both or mixed rhinitis. Distinguishing these will increase treatment success and decrease the time before symptoms improve [6].

Radiological investigations may be useful and are guided by nasal symptoms. Incidental sinus changes may be present in up to 33% of CT and 67% of MRI scans. PPIs should not be used to treat upper airway symptoms [5].

Laryngeal dysfunction and hypersensitivity are common in chronic cough [5]. Consider treatment of laryngeal hypersensitivity as a symptom of cough hypersensitivity. Laryngitis often leads to chronic cough with voice changes (e.g., hoarseness, aphonia). Chronic cough is frequent in functional voice disorders, (e.g., muscle tension dysphonia) [11].

In vocal cord dysfunction, laryngeal hypersensitivity leads to persistent laryngospasm due to different triggering factors, manifesting as cough, wheeze, breathlessness, and voice disturbance. Coughing can be both a trigger and a symptom. Symptoms may be episodic. Diagnosis is based on findings in history, laryngoscopy, and, if possible, spirometry during an attack [5; 11]. In a refractory chronic cough population, vocal cord dysfunction is a common finding and may be a manifestation of laryngeal hypersensitivity. Treatment is by speech and language therapy intervention [5].

## REFLUX DISORDER ETIOLOGIES OF CHRONIC COUGH AND THEIR MANAGEMENT

In GERD, retrograde transit of gastric contents into the esophagus leads to troublesome symptoms of heartburn, esophageal chest pain, and regurgitation (i.e., “typical” esophageal symptoms) [133; 134]. Cough is an extraesophageal symptom of reflux disease [11]. Chronic cough has a low, but potential, pathophysiological relationship to reflux disease [133]. Estimated chronic cough due to GERD vary widely (7% to 85%), with higher prevalence in Western than Asian countries [20]. Chronic cough and GERD are both very common conditions and can therefore co-appear without being causally related [99].

GERD was previously considered a leading chronic cough etiology directly caused by the acidity of proximal esophageal refluxate, but patients with chronic cough and healthy controls show similar proximal reflux events [58; 135]. Many patients with chronic cough report GERD symptoms, but PPI therapy is ineffective in those without acidic reflux and only modestly benefit those with typical esophageal symptoms [109].

Reflux can be acidic or non-acidic, liquid or gaseous, and proximal or distal in location. Reflux can trigger cough, coughing can induce reflux, and chronic cough may also cause GERD or increase reflux episodes [20; 134]. PPIs decrease reflux acidity but not reflux events and work poorly in patients with airway or extraesophageal reflux [136]. PPI failure in chronic cough treatment suggests the acidic component of reflux has little effect on chronic cough or its etiology [58].

In extraesophageal reflux, troublesome symptoms not normally considered esophageal manifest in the lower and upper airways as chronic cough, asthma, laryngitis, dysphonia, pulmonary fibrosis, sinus disease, ear disease, postnasal drip, throat clearing, non-cardiac chest pain, or dental erosion [20; 134].

Laryngopharyngeal reflux is defined as the backflow of weakly or non-acidic “mist” or liquid above the upper esophageal sphincter into the upper airways. Due to weaker mucosal defenses in the upper respiratory tract, inflammation of the mucous membranes and epithelial tissue damage occur with exposure to fewer, and less acidic, reflux events. A significant negative effect from pepsin, a gastric enzyme, on oropharyngeal and respiratory tract tissues is also demonstrated [58; 137].

Airway reflux is interchangeably used for laryngopharyngeal, non-acid esophageal, extraesophageal, and silent reflux. But it is important to remember that airway reflux is not GERD. Defined by the symptoms of heartburn and dyspepsia, and associated with esophagitis, GERD is a peptic condition predominantly of liquid acidic reflux [59]. The majority of patients with airway reflux/laryngopharyngeal reflux do not have esophagitis or heartburn [137].

Airway reflux shifts the paradigm from traditional GERD to cough hypersensitivity through sensitization of vagal afferents. Evidence that esophageal irritation by acid and non-acid reflux may directly initiate cough led to the concept of an esophagobronchial reflex based on crosstalk at the nucleus tractus solitarius between esophageal and airway sensory neurons converging in this brainstem area [58].

This led to gastroesophageal reflux-associated cough, a cough-predominant phenotype of GERD, as a chronic airway inflammatory disease. Epithelial damage and airway inflammation in gastroesophageal reflux-associated cough patients suggest micro-aspiration, and the esophagobronchial reflex mediated by distal esophageal vagal afferents [136].

Chronic cough may result from GERD/extraesophageal reflux-induced airway inflammation and supra-esophageal pathology. Whether refluxate causes damage leading to extraesophageal reflux, needs to be acidic or merely contain pepsin, or whether neurogenic signaling leads to inflammation and subsequent symptoms remains unclear [134; 136].

In sum, GERD can directly affect the airways when gastric acid backflows into the esophagus, irritating the proximal esophagus and laryngopharyngeal areas, triggering the cough reflex to clear the airways. Gastric content can indirectly cause

## REFLUX INVESTIGATIONS IN PATIENTS WITH CHRONIC COUGH

Investigation	Description	Utility
24-hour esophageal pH testing	A catheter is inserted nasally into the esophagus with two pH sensors for 24-hour measurement of proximal and distal acid reflux	Does not reliably predict response to PPI therapy
Barium meal	Radiographic test that visualizes the movement of barium liquid. Can detect structural and motility abnormalities of the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum.	May demonstrate a hiatal hernia and document the extent of non-acid reflux not identified on 24-hour pH testing
Manometry	A catheter is inserted to assess motility patterns by measuring the amplitude of contractile events in the esophagus and its sphincters	Impaired peristalsis is more prevalent in patients with chronic cough, consistent with symptoms of esophageal dysmotility
Impedance testing	Intraesophageal probes measure impedance and pH to record acid, weakly acidic, and non-acid reflux events	Non-acid refluxate may be important in chronic cough etiology, but impedance testing is not validated to investigate chronic cough
Upper GI endoscopy	Allows direct inspection of the upper GI tract and biopsy of stomach and duodenum	Often unrevealing; endoscopic evidence of GERD less common with atypical (e.g., chronic cough) vs. typical symptoms

Source: [19]

Table 6

chronic cough by stimulating the distal esophagus, resulting in vagus nerve irritation and cough reflex sensitization. Airway reflux may comprise most cases of reflux-induced cough, its extraesophageal symptom hampering diagnosis based on symptoms alone [39].

### Management

As discussed, the role of reflux, esophageal dysmotility, and aspiration in chronic cough is controversial. Studies suggest non-acidic reflux, both liquid and gaseous, may be an etiological factor. However, no tool reliably detects such reflux and diagnosis relies on clinical history supported by validated questionnaires (e.g., the HARQ). Moreover, the high prevalence of esophageal dysmotility in patients with chronic cough suggests esophagopharyngeal reflux rather than GERD may be the problem [10].

Many of the signs and symptoms associated with chronic cough are explicable by reflux and aspiration, including voice change, nasal symptoms, and dysgeusia. Frequent chest infection bronchitis, even frank bronchiectasis, may be the consequence rather than the cause of cough via repeated aspiration. Unsurprisingly, following aspiration of GI contents there is a neutrophilic or eosinophilic inflammatory response that might be giving rise to asthmatic cough and mucus hypersecretion [10].

The 2016 ACCP clinical practice guideline for reflux-associated chronic cough suggests that esophageal manometry and pH-metry be performed in patients with suspected reflux cough

refractory to a three-month antireflux trial and being evaluated for surgical management (antireflux or bariatric); or with strong clinical suspicion warranting diagnostic testing for gastroesophageal reflux (**Table 6**). Esophageal manometry assesses for major motility disorder. It involves placing the pH electrode 5 cm above the lower esophageal sphincter in the pH monitoring study after the patient is off PPIs for seven days and histamine H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists for three days [83].

For overweight and obese patients, treatment of suspected reflux-cough should include diet change to promote weight loss. In all patients, recommended diet and lifestyle modifications include [6]:

- Eliminate coffee, tea, soda, other carbonated beverages, fish oil supplements, chocolate, mints, alcohol, and energy drinks, sports, or other drinks containing citric acid
- Consume no more than 45 grams of fat daily
- Avoid smoking and vaping
- Avoid exercising that markedly increases intra-abdominal pressure
- Elevate the head of the bed and avoid meals within three hours of bedtime

In patients with heartburn and regurgitation, PPIs, histamine H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists, alginate, or antacid therapy is often sufficient to control these symptoms. Gastrointestinal symptoms respond within 4 to 8 weeks, but cough may take 12



weeks to improve [83]. PPI monotherapy is not recommended for chronic cough with solely extraesophageal symptoms, as it is unlikely to resolve the cough.

The ACCP suggests against antireflux surgery for patients with chronic cough patients with a major motility disorder and/or normal acid exposure time in the distal esophagus, as the procedural risks and lack of supporting evidence make the risk-benefit ratio unacceptable [83]. However, surgery may be considered for presumed reflux-cough in patients with normal peristalsis, abnormal esophageal acid exposure on pH-metry, and refractory to medical therapy.

## TREATABLE TRAITS AND THOROUGHNESS

The variable success in managing chronic cough may be due, in part, to guidelines or protocols not being implemented as planned (**Table 7**) [6; 80]. Failure to recognize the complexity of airway diseases can lead to suboptimal outcomes, as diseases with different endotypes can require different therapeutic strategies (precision medicine). Because the treatable traits approach is a label-free approach, it does not start on the assumption that the diagnosis (e.g., asthma, COPD) is well-established and clear, a situation that is not the case in many instances in clinical practice, particularly in primary care. This is a fundamental, but often overlooked, issue in the current guideline-directed management of airway diseases [14; 16].

### Pulmonary and Extrapulmonary Traits as “Connected Comorbidities”

As discussed, the treatable traits approach encourages transdiagnostic thinking about chronic cough and associated diseases to identify distinct endotypes and phenotypes within traditional diagnostic categories, as well as shared mechanisms across diagnostic boundaries. For example, asthma and severe chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyposis are frequently associated with other, coexisting type 2 inflammatory diseases, such as NSAID-exacerbated respiratory disease, allergic rhinitis, eosinophilic esophagitis, atopic dermatitis, and type 2 eosinophilic COPD [114]. Chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyposis has a 7% prevalence in patients with asthma, increasing to 40% in NSAIDs-exacerbated respiratory disease [138]. In predisposed subjects, a dysregulated type-2 inflammation can develop in epithelial barriers (e.g., airways, intestine, skin) in response to various antigens, such as allergens, micro-organisms, and pollutants. This dysregulated epithelial response leads to diseases such as asthma, rhinitis/rhinosinusitis, eosinophilic gastrointestinal disorders, and atopic dermatitis [95].

Allergens are not the only antigens that trigger inflammation. Rather than allergic disorders, type 2 disorders would be a more appropriate definition, also including non-allergic eosinophilic diseases such as nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, chronic rhinosinusitis, and eosinophilic disorders of the gastrointestinal tract [95].

Targeted biological therapies can also address conditions with shared type 2 pathophysiology. Biologics with FDA approval targeting type 2 inflammatory disease pathophysiology include dupilumab (anti-IL-4 and IL-13), omalizumab (anti-IgE), mepolizumab (anti-IL-5), and benralizumab (anti-IL-5R) [92]. Mepolizumab has proven effective in chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyposis and asthma with high eosinophil levels in sputum. Dual targeting of IL-4 and IL-13 by dupilumab has shown efficacy across chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyposis, asthma, eosinophilic esophagitis, and atopic dermatitis, and in uncontrolled COPD with high eosinophil counts [93]. Chronic cough, it should be stressed, has not been examined in any study of biological therapies.

### The Argument for Thoroughness

The optimal clinical approach in chronic cough and refractory chronic cough continues to evolve. The ERS guideline suggests simplifying the diagnostic process to shorten a patient’s journey to a diagnosis of refractory/unexplained chronic cough and limiting sequential empiric trials to two to four weeks unless responses are observed [10]. However, the 2023 BTS guideline and others argue for a more assertive approach to identify all treatable traits and maximize therapy response before diagnosing refractory/unexplained chronic cough [5; 78]. This would be the counterargument to the diagnostic-therapeutic empiric trials approach.

In a 2024 study, all 201 patients presenting to a cough center in 2018–2022 were prospectively studied. Refractory chronic cough (defined as persistent cough severity VAS  $\geq 40$  with little improvement after at least two treatment attempts) was diagnosed in 30.7% and unexplained chronic cough in 1.5% [78]. The authors suggest a thorough diagnostic algorithm, with frequent second-step investigations, enabled diagnoses of less common cough etiologies and the low (1.5%) unexplained chronic cough rate. As many therapeutic trials as necessary were engaged in order to target all identifiable treatable traits of chronic cough. Treatment followed a stepwise intensification of therapy and introduced add-on treatment of all cough causes, but this was time-consuming and related to difficulties in keeping patients’ adherence. In routine practice, the authors usually recommend more than two therapeutic trials before diagnosing refractory chronic cough. When refractory/unexplained chronic cough is diagnosed, additional treatments should be initiated. These patients require nonpharmacologic and/or drug therapies with opioids, neuromodulators, or novel refractory chronic cough agents.

In a separate study conducted at a clinic in China, experts found that among 1,554 patients with chronic cough patients with negative chest x-rays, 58.8% were attributable to common causes, including nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis (18.3%), cough-variant asthma (16.3%), gastroesophageal reflux-associated cough (13.2%), and upper airway cough syndrome (11.1%) [139]. In addition, 18.4% of cases were attributable to other causes: chronic bronchitis (6.1%), bronchiectasis

**PITFALLS IN THE MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC COUGH**

**Upper Airway Cough Syndrome**

Failing to recognize that upper airway cough syndrome (also asthma or GERD) can present as a cough-phlegm syndrome, misdiagnosed as chronic bronchitis.  
 Assuming that all histamine H1 receptor antagonists (H1RAs) are the same. H1RAs without anticholinergic activity do not help nonallergic rhinitis conditions. Further, anticholinergic H1RAs may adversely affect memory, glaucoma, and prostate problems. Instead, consider ipratropium bromide nasal therapy.  
 Failing to consider:

- “Silent” upper airway cough syndrome when a patient does not sense a postnasal drip or realize their frequent throat clearing
- Allergic rhinitis and recommend the avoidance of allergens because symptoms are perennial
- Sinusitis because it is nonobvious
- NSAID-exacerbated disease
- The potentially beneficial role of upper respiratory endoscopy

**Asthma**

Failing to recognize that:

- Asthma can present as cough alone (i.e., cough-variant asthma)
- Inhaled medications may exacerbate cough
- Positive methacholine challenge alone is not diagnostic of asthma

**Nonasthmatic Eosinophilic Bronchitis**

Failing to consider the diagnosis, occupational/environmental causes, or order the correct test

**GERD**

Failing to recognize that:

- “Silent” reflux disease can be causal and that it may take two to three months of intensive treatment before cough starts to improve and five to six months to resolve
- GERD can be worsened by comorbidities (e.g., obstructive sleep apnea) or their treatment (e.g., nitrates or calcium channel blockers for coronary artery disease, progesterone for hormone replacement)

Assuming that:

- Cough cannot be due to GERD because cough remains unchanged when gastrointestinal symptoms improve
- Vocal cords’ appearance can diagnose GERD, when inflammatory changes from coughing can mimic those of reflux

Being unaware that acid suppression alone will not improve cough

Failing to consider:

- Non-acid reflux disease
- The role of diet, intense exercise, and prokinetic therapy
- Adequately treat co-existing causes of cough that perpetuate the cycle of cough and reflux because cough can provoke reflux

**Triad of Upper Airway Cough Syndrome, Asthma, and GERD**

Failing to consider that more than one condition may be contributing simultaneously to cough, or failing to consider additional contributing conditions because of another “obvious” cause (e.g., COPD)  
 Failing to appreciate:

- These chronic disorders cannot be cured and will periodically flare, especially with viral illness
- When cough flares after a period of remission, re-evaluate as if a new problem
- Asthma may become a problem when it was not before

**Unsuspected Airway Diseases**

Failing to perform bronchoscopy when chest x-ray and CT are normal. Transnasal route allows inspection of both upper and lower respiratory tracts.  
 Failing to appreciate that prolonged IV therapy for suppurative airway disease may succeed when the same drug given orally failed

Source: [6; 80]

Table 7

(4.5%), atopic (4.4%), and postinfectious (3.5%) cough; 9.6% had chronic cough of unexplained etiology. Finally, 13.1% of cases were due to rare causes (e.g., bacterial bronchitis, somatic cough syndrome, diffuse panbronchiolitis, obstructive sleep apnea, and interstitial lung disease). These findings suggest that special examinations should be considered after excluding common causes of chronic cough.

It is important to remember that the workup to rule out refractory/unexplained chronic cough is not complete until bronchoscopy has been performed [6]. A study of bronchoscopy involving 54 patients with refractory/unexplained chronic cough with sputum production (more than 1 tbsp/day), atypical urge-to-cough sensations in chest, and unremarkable chest CT revealed bronchoalveolar neutrophilia in 84% and excessive dynamic airway collapse in 31% [140]. Bronchoscopy influenced or changed the management in 89% of patients. Bronchoscopy findings in this specific population have rarely been described, and treatment strategies in these patients differ from typical refractory/unexplained chronic cough. Bronchoscopy provides high diagnostic value in refractory/unexplained chronic cough with mucus production, identifying specific treatable traits of neutrophilic airway inflammation and excessive dynamic airway collapse [140].

Another argument for moving away from the routine use of empiric therapeutic-diagnostic trials is to spare patients with chronic cough from exposure to minimally helpful or unhelpful medications with potentially adverse effects. For example, PPIs are recommended against for chronic cough in patients who lack classic GERD symptoms. Cumulative doses of PPIs dose-dependently increase the risk of developing hypomagnesemia and other side effects. Both hypomagnesemia and its consequent decrease in melatonin production can decrease lower esophageal sphincter tone and trigger a paradoxical iatrogenic cough. Rather than PPI dose escalation for partial responders, magnesium and melatonin supplementation is recommended to curtail side effects of long-term PPIs [104].

Oral corticosteroids, due to their substantial cumulative side effects, are now recommended only as a last resort in the most recent asthma treatment guidelines [141; 142]. Even occasional short courses of oral corticosteroids are associated with significant short-term and cumulative long-term adverse effects, with a pronounced dose-response. Short-term adverse effects of oral corticosteroids include sleep disturbance, increased appetite, reflux, mood changes, sepsis, pneumonia, and thromboembolism. As few as four to five lifetime courses of oral corticosteroids are associated with a significantly increased dose-dependent risk of diabetes, cataracts, heart failure, osteoporosis, and several other conditions [142].

## TREATMENT OF REFRACTORY CHRONIC COUGH

Refractory and unexplained chronic cough are diagnoses of exclusion. For cases with no clear etiology after an extensive workup, or when guideline-based treatment improves the presumed underlying cause of coughing but not the chronic cough itself, cough hypersensitivity syndrome is the most likely explanation [39].

A variety of organizations have published guideline recommendations for the treatment of refractory and/or unexplained chronic cough (**Table 8**). The British Thoracic Society asserts that cough hypersensitivity is a treatable trait of many conditions and often the foremost problem in patients with chronic dry/unproductive cough [5]. However, there are currently no tools to positively identify cough hypersensitivity. If the condition does not improve with treatment of treatable traits, it is considered refractory chronic cough. In these patients, the most effective treatments are those addressing cough hypersensitivity and include low-dose morphine, gabapentin, and nonpharmacological therapy. In addition, novel therapies are in development, with P2X3 antagonists the most promising [5].

## PHARMACOTHERAPY

Neuromodulators are centrally acting agents for refractory chronic cough that can downregulate the hypersensitive cough reflex to decrease coughing. Neuromodulators are first-line options for refractory chronic cough [39; 57]. However, some of the literature on neuromodulator use in patients with refractory chronic cough might seem counterintuitive.

Clinical trials of P2X3 antagonists have shown efficacy in reducing cough frequency in many patients with refractory/unexplained chronic cough, but the exact mechanisms underlying refractory/unexplained chronic cough remain poorly understood. Although data also suggest central mechanisms may be a key component in the pathophysiology of refractory/unexplained chronic cough, antitussive drug development has focused on peripheral targets [143].

Among patients with unexplained chronic cough started on amitriptyline and contacted by mail two to three years later, 64% had stopped the medication due to no improvement (40%) and/or side effects (48%). The most common side effects triggering treatment nonadherence were sedation (18%), dry mouth (18%), anxiety (8%), difficulty sleeping (8%), and dizziness (5%). Combining patients who continued and stopped amitriptyline, 53% reported cough improvement of at least 50%. There is some evidence that as treatment duration increases, amitriptyline efficacy may decrease [144].

GUIDELINE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR NEUROMODULATOR TREATMENT OF REFRACTORY/UNEXPLAINED CHRONIC COUGH						
Drug	Guideline Organization (Year)					
	ACCP (2016)	ERS (2020)	GRS (2020) <sup>a</sup>	FRS (2023)	BTS (2023)	NEURO-COUGH (2023)
Low-dose morphine slow-release	Not reported <sup>b</sup>	Strong recommendation	Strong recommendation	Recommended: Grade B	Recommended	Recommended, very high consensus
Codeine	Not reported	Not recommended	Not reported	Not reported	Recommended against	Not reported
Gabapentin	Recommended	Conditional recommendation	Can be used	Recommended: Grade B	Recommended	Recommended, high consensus
Pregabalin	Not reported	Conditional recommendation	Can be used	Recommended: Grade B	Recommended	Not reported
Amitriptyline	Not reported	Not reported	Can be used	Recommended: Grade C	Not reported	Recommended, high consensus
Baclofen	Not reported	Not reported	Not reported	Not reported	Not reported	Not reported

<sup>a</sup>“Can be used” is a weaker endorsement than “recommendation” (i.e., “should be used”).  
<sup>b</sup>75% of expert panelists endorsed a recommendation of morphine, falling short of 80% required for inclusion; thus, morphine is neither recommended for nor against.  
ACCP = American College of Chest Physicians; BTS = British Thoracic Society; ERS = European Respiratory Society; FRS = French-Speaking Society of Respiratory Diseases; GRS = German Respiratory Society; NEURO-COUGH = New Understanding in the treatment Of COUGH Clinical Research Collaboration; SR = sustained-release.

Source: [5; 10; 11; 12; 18; 86] Table 8

## Opioid Medications

The concept of chronic cough as a neuropathic condition, treated with neuromodulators, is not new. In 1856, Edward Smith described chronic cough as a “disease in itself” due to “irritability of the nerves” that could be treated with “morphia,” 164 years before expert consensus in the European Respiratory Society chronic cough guidelines concluded the same, albeit for refractory chronic cough [10; 111]. Opioids are thought to exert antitussive effects through opioid receptors within inhibitory cortical descending pathways [59].

### Codeine

Codeine is a weak opioid that is metabolized to morphine (5% to 10%) by the enzyme cytochrome P450 2D6 (CYP2D6) in the liver to produce its antitussive effects [145]. Codeine has long been used as an antitussive, but a minority of the population possess a genetic variation in CYP2D6 activity, with variable and unpredictable metabolism that increases unpleasant side effects and decreases efficacy. Codeine is now considered an unreliable antitussive and should not be used in chronic cough [5].

### Low-Dose Morphine Slow-Release (SR)

Morphine is not affected by interindividual variability in CYP2D6 metabolism; thus, its biological effects are more predictable than codeine [146]. In the first positive results from a double-blind randomized controlled trial for any drug therapy of refractory chronic cough, morphine was selected to minimize the variability of codeine [25; 147]. This study compared twice-daily slow-release morphine 5 mg with placebo for four weeks, followed by four weeks of crossover to the alternate treatment. A three-month open-labeled extension of the randomized controlled trial allowed dose escalation to 10 mg twice per day if patients thought their cough was inadequately controlled [147].

The mean LCQ score significantly improved on morphine but not placebo, with significant improvement in physical, psychological, and social subdomains. A 40% reduction in daily cough scores was noted with morphine; placebo had no discernable effect over baseline. Of patients entering the extension, 67% opted for dose escalation and, after three months, had cough outcome improvements similar to 5-mg full-responder patients. Side-effects of constipation (40%) and drowsiness (25%) were

tolerable; no patient dropped out from adverse events. Sedation, previously believed to explain the antitussive action of morphine, was transient, but the antitussive effect continued throughout the core and extension study phases [147].

The authors of this study state that side effects and dependence are obvious concerns with opioid therapy for what is a disabling but non-life-threatening condition. However, they note that the risk-benefit ratio makes low-dose slow-release morphine a credible therapeutic option in patients with refractory chronic cough for whom other treatments have failed. Comparisons of similar therapeutic options were made with patients who require long-term oral corticosteroids for severe nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis or cough-variant asthma with a consequently worse adverse event profile [147].

Another double-blind crossover study randomized previous morphine responders to slow-release morphine 5–10 mg twice daily or placebo. After five days, morphine reduced 24-hour cough frequency by 72% over placebo, including overnight (83%) and daytime (71%) cough frequency [148]. Morphine also significantly reduced noxious somatic sensations driving the urge to cough, suggesting this may be an important component of opioid modality in refractory chronic cough [149].

In a real-world effectiveness and tolerability study of long-term, low-dose opioids, 100 patients were prescribed twice daily slow-release morphine 5–10 mg (72%), oxycodone, or oxycodone/naloxone for a median 52 weeks for refractory/unexplained chronic cough. Median cough severity score (CSS, on a 0–10 scale) decreased from 8 pre-treatment to 4. In all, 60% had good-to-excellent response, while 25% had no response. Side effects (present in 38%) were most commonly constipation (25%), which was managed with dose reduction or constipation therapy; however, 15% stopped treatment due to side effect intolerance. Low-dose opioids improved long-term cough outcomes and were tolerated by most patients with refractory/unexplained chronic cough, but managing constipation allowed more patients to continue therapy [150].

Clinical experience with low-dose, slow-release morphine suggests that up to 50% to 60% of patients with refractory chronic cough obtain benefit [5; 59; 150]. Response dichotomizes into either a large effect on cough symptoms or no effect at all and is usually apparent within five days. The main side effect, constipation, can be managed with laxatives or adding oral low-dose naloxone. Once-daily dosing may be sufficient if cough symptoms are mainly troublesome during waking hours or overnight. Antitussive tolerance does not seem to develop. Unlike in severe chronic pain, there appears to be a dose ceiling for slow-release morphine of twice daily 10 mg, with no further antitussive effect beyond this. Concerns remain about misuse/addiction potential, and patients must be carefully monitored [5; 59]. As noted in a 2024 review, it is unclear why such low doses, compared with those used for analgesia, are effective in some patients with refractory chronic cough [25].

## Gabapentinoids

Gabapentin and pregabalin are synthetic analogs of gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) that bind the  $\alpha 2\delta$  subunit of voltage-gated calcium channels to block excitatory neurotransmitter release. Both were developed originally for epilepsy treatment and subsequently found to ameliorate chronic neuropathic pain, which is associated with central sensitization. The similar pathophysiologic mechanisms of chronic neuropathic pain and chronic cough suggested that gabapentin and pregabalin may also be beneficial in patients with refractory chronic cough [151].

Gabapentin (1,800 mg/day or the maximum tolerable dose) was compared with placebo for eight weeks in a double-blind randomized controlled trial of 62 patients with refractory chronic cough. Gabapentin significantly improved LCQ score over placebo by 1.8 points, and significantly reduced objective cough frequency and cough severity over placebo. Gabapentin response was greater in patients with symptoms of central sensitization (e.g., laryngeal paresthesia, allotussia, hypertussia). The onset of action of gabapentin took up to four weeks [152]. It was subsequently noted that cough frequency differed between gabapentin and placebo groups at baseline (45.3 vs. 68.8 coughs per hour) and was measured only for one hour at each assessment visit, making interpretation of cough frequency outcomes difficult [25; 146].

An open-label randomized trial compared gabapentin (300 mg three times per day) to baclofen (20 mg three times per day), an antispasticity drug, in 234 patients with refractory gastroesophageal reflux-associated cough over nine weeks. Compared with baseline, gabapentin and baclofen similarly led to decreased cough symptom scores and patients with success for cough resolution (57.3% vs. 53.0%). Gabapentin led to lower side effect rates than baclofen of somnolence (20% vs. 35%) and dizziness (11% vs. 24%) [151]. In addition to other burdensome side effects, sudden discontinuation of baclofen can result in seizures [5].

In another study, twice daily pregabalin 75 mg was prescribed to 50 consecutive patients with refractory or unexplained chronic cough for three months. Pregabalin response, defined as LCQ total score improvement of  $\geq 1.3$ , was attained by 56% of patients. Responders were more likely to have refractory (with underlying pulmonary disease) than unexplained chronic cough, and on average were more symptomatic at baseline. There was no information on side effects or dropout [153].

In another study, 40 patients with refractory chronic cough were randomized to speech pathology treatment plus pregabalin 300 mg/day or speech pathology treatment plus placebo for four weeks. Compared with the placebo group, those who received speech pathology treatment/pregabalin experienced a statistically significant improvement [154]. However, CNS adverse effects (e.g., dizziness, disorientation, confusion, fatigue, blurred vision) were common and sometimes intolerable. The effects of pregabalin on 24-hour cough frequency outcome were non-significant [146].

Because gabapentinoids have beneficial effects on anxiety, improvements in mood may contribute to the apparent benefit or changes in symptom perception or cough intensity. Side effects are common, wide ranging, and can be difficult for patients to tolerate. Slow dose escalation may help minimize this, and maximal doses may not be needed to afford some improvement in cough. Gabapentin and pregabalin may have abuse potential in susceptible patients [5].

Gabapentin should be started at a low dose (e.g., 100 mg three times per day) and titrated up to a maximum dose (600 mg three times per day), depending on clinical effects and tolerability. The usual starting dose of pregabalin for chronic cough is 25 mg twice daily, with increases in increments to a maximum 75 mg twice daily. Patients should be reassessed during dose titration and therapy stopped if there are significant side effects or inadequate response to treatment [5].

In clinical experience, the minority of patients who achieve cough suppression often do so at the expense of intolerable adverse effects, usually sedation [57]. Among 38 patients prescribed gabapentin (maximum: 1,800 mg per day) or pregabalin (maximum: 300 mg per day) for refractory chronic cough, 24% developed immediate intolerable side effects and 37% tolerated the drugs but had no response and stopped the medication. Among the 39% with an initial favorable response, 18% eventually developed intolerable side effects and 21% were able to continue with therapy long-term. The most common side effect was drowsiness/sedation. In real-world practice, gabapentinoids are effective in a subgroup of patients with refractory chronic cough, but side effects may outweigh their potential benefits, which were intolerable for 42% of patients [155].

### Tricyclic Antidepressants

Amitriptyline and nortriptyline are tricyclic antidepressants with a broad range of pharmacologic actions effecting adrenergic, serotonergic, muscarinic, and histaminergic systems. Amitriptyline is also used in chronic neuropathic pain (e.g., migraine, postherpetic neuralgia, painful diabetic neuropathy) and has been suggested to be effective in the treatment of chronic cough, with anticholinergic properties thought to underlie the antitussive effect [57; 156]. However, clinical experience with amitriptyline in refractory chronic cough suggests more limited value [5].

In a small randomized trial of patients attending an otolaryngology clinic with postviral refractory chronic cough, amitriptyline 10 mg per day was compared with codeine 10 mg/guaifenesin 100 mg combined in a syrup taken every six hours. The majority of patients reported a 75% to 100% improvement in cough with amitriptyline, while most reported no improvement with codeine/guaifenesin. Compared with the control arm, amitriptyline was significantly associated with a response greater than 50% [157]. In a randomized controlled trial of patients with chronic pharyngolaryngeal neuropathy, 67% had subjective improvement with amitriptyline (up to 50 mg/day),

compared with 44% with placebo. The mean Voice Handicap Index-10 (VHI-10) score worsened with amitriptyline but was unchanged with placebo. Attrition over the eight-week trial was 40% [158].

Nortriptyline was studied in 42 patients with neurogenic chronic cough, of whom 45% discontinued nortriptyline due to side effect intolerance or lack of response. The average time to clinical response was 5.5 months. The average minimum effective dose was 21 mg per day in responders. Laryngeal asymmetry was present in 85.7% of all patients. Side effects included sedation, xerostomia, and anxiety. The intolerability was surprising, because nortriptyline is both a metabolite of amitriptyline and reported to be better tolerated [159].

### Pharmacotherapy for Chronic Cough in Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis is a chronic, progressive, and invariably fatal fibrotic lung disease, and 85% of patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis experience cough, a distressing symptom associated with rapid disease progression. Available treatments for idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis slow disease progression but do not improve symptoms or quality of life. Thalidomide benefitted idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis cough in one randomized controlled trial, but its side effect profile renders it practically useless, as only 20% of patients were able to tolerate it [125]. Worse still, the potentially severe adverse effect of peripheral neuropathy suggests it may damage sensory nerves (vagal afferents). Thalidomide should not be considered even as second-line therapy for idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis cough until further evaluation of the benefit/risk ratio has been undertaken [160].

Although studies on refractory chronic cough can help inform the treatment of idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis cough, the biological mechanisms that contribute to cough probably differ in these conditions, as evidenced by the contrasting results with gefapixant, a P2X3 receptor antagonist, in refractory chronic cough (positive findings) and idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis cough (negative findings) [161].

### Nalbuphine

Nalbuphine extended-release (ER) is an opioid agonist-antagonist. In a double-blind randomized controlled trial of patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis and chronic cough, nalbuphine ER tablets (titrated up to 162 mg twice daily) led to 75.1% reduction in daytime objective cough frequency, compared with 22.6% with placebo, a 50.8% placebo-adjusted reduction in 24-hour cough frequency, and similar improvements in patient reported outcomes [162]. Nalbuphine ER was the first therapy to show robust effects on chronic cough in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis [25]. However, nalbuphine side effects of nausea (42.1%), fatigue (31.6%), constipation (28.9%), and dizziness (26.3%) led to a 24% dropout during the drug initiation phase, partially attributed to the inflexible forced-titration study design [162].

### Low-Dose Morphine SR

In a multicenter randomized controlled trial of patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis and chronic cough, low-dose, slow-release morphine (5 mg twice daily) reduced objective awake cough frequency by 39.4% over placebo, and all cough-related patient-reported outcomes remained significantly improved when adjusted for placebo. Morphine side effects of nausea (14%) and constipation (21%) resulted in only one participant discontinuing morphine, indicating tolerability for these patients. The authors note that the safety assessments during study visits were reassuring and there appeared to be no changes in mood or excessive fatigue with morphine [161]. The authors advocate for rapid implementation in clinical practice due to the well-established safety profile and worldwide availability [163].

A 2024 study reported variable effectiveness of slow-release morphine (8–32 mg per day) in reducing breathlessness in patients with COPD. But, it provided reassuring safety data by observing no evidence of harm and no worsening of subjective daytime sleepiness, alertness, or sleep quality at one and four weeks in these severely ill patients [164].

### INVESTIGATIONAL PHARMACOTHERAPIES

Low-dose, slow-release morphine has the strongest observational and empirical evidence of antitussive benefit in refractory chronic cough of any commercially available (although off-label) medication and may be used safely in this population when patients are carefully screened and monitored. Because as many as 50% of patients with refractory chronic cough have no response to low-dose morphine and with substantial restrictions on opioid prescribing in the United States, effective peripherally acting antitussives are an urgent priority for investigators.

#### P2X3 Receptor Antagonists

P2X3 receptors form ion channels containing ATP-binding sites. In the lungs and airway, ATP activates P2X3 receptors localized on vagal sensory nerve terminals, resulting in bronchoconstriction, cough, and localized release of inflammatory neuropeptides [165].

A breakthrough occurred when gefapixant, a P2X3 receptor antagonist, demonstrated a dramatic reduction in chronic cough. Other P2X3 antagonists confirmed the efficacy of this drug class in refractory chronic cough. The endogenous ligand for P2X3 is ATP. Epithelial damage is believed to release ATP. Evidence suggests that ATP largely mediates peripheral hypersensitivity; therefore, gefapixant is peripherally acting in refractory chronic cough [166].

P2X3 receptors are ion channels found on sensory afferent nerve fibers, activated by ATP. In preclinical studies, vagal C fibers, including those thought to be important in mediating cough, have been shown to express P2X3 and P2X2. At present, it is unclear whether ATP concentrations are elevated or P2X3 receptor expression increased in the airways of patients with

refractory chronic cough, or how antagonism of P2X3 plays a role in reducing coughing to a range of chemical irritants, temperature changes, and mechanical stimuli. Nonetheless, in clinical trials, P2X3 receptor antagonism has provided robust reductions in cough frequency and patient-reported outcomes [25].

#### Gefapixant

The first novel therapy to have significant effects in patients with refractory chronic cough was gefapixant, a first-in-class P2X3 antagonist that was originally planned to be developed as an analgesic. Gefapixant has become the first therapeutic to undergo systematic development as a treatment for refractory chronic cough following unprecedented reductions in cough frequency.

In a landmark study, twice daily gefapixant 600 mg showed remarkable therapeutic effects in patients with refractory chronic cough [167]. Objective 24-hour cough frequency was reduced 74% compared with placebo, and daytime cough severity VAS score and CQLQ score reduced by -25.6 and -9.2, respectively. However, another important finding was that virtually all treated patients reported ageusia, or loss of taste, and 24% withdrew because of the adverse effect. These taste side effects are likely attributable to the inhibition of P2X2/3 channels on the nerve fibers innervating the taste buds by high-dose gefapixant [146].

Subsequent studies suggest that antitussive effects are retained at much lower doses (30–50 mg twice daily), at which taste was altered rather than lost and hence the therapy was better tolerated. Larger multi-center parallel group studies were performed in the UK and the United States followed by the first-ever global phase 3 trials of an antitussive treatment for refractory chronic cough, which reported positive findings over placebo for a 45-mg twice daily dose [25].

#### Eliapixant and Filapixant

Following the taste side effects reported for gefapixant, more selective P2X3 antagonists were evaluated for the treatment of refractory chronic cough; however, there was some uncertainty about whether effects at both P2X3 and P2X2/3 channels were both contributing to antitussive efficacy and hence whether more selective agents would have similar efficacy. Eliapixant and filapixant both demonstrated efficacy in dose-ranging studies, but eliapixant appeared to cause less taste disturbance (up to 21% of patients) and was therefore progressed to a phase 2b parallel trial. Although this trial reported positive findings, a small number of cases of liver toxicity prevented further development of this therapy for refractory chronic cough [25].

#### Sivopixant

Another more selective P2X3 antagonist, sivopixant, exhibited promising findings in a single-dose crossover study, very similar in design to the first gefapixant study. The reduction in daytime cough frequency of 32% over placebo (the primary endpoint) was not quite statistically significant, but taste adverse effects

were only reported in 6.4% of patients. In a follow-up, multicenter parallel group study assessing a range of doses for four weeks, no dose of sivopixant could be discriminated from the very large placebo effect—there was 60% placebo reduction in cough frequency from baseline. The largest absolute change in cough frequency was observed for the highest dose (300 mg), but 30% of patients reported taste adverse effects. No further studies of sivopixant in refractory chronic cough have been planned [25].

### **Camlipixant**

Finally, thought to be the most selective P2X3 antagonist, camlipixant is the second compound in this class to be evaluated in phase 3 trials. The first double-blind randomized controlled crossover trial of camlipixant studied escalating doses from 25 mg to 200 mg versus matched placebo. Although the primary endpoint of awake cough frequency did not reach statistical significance, preplanned subgroup analysis in patients with a cough frequency of at least 20 coughs per hour (80% of patients) and those with greater than the median cough frequency ( $\geq 32$  coughs per hour, 50% of patients) exhibited significant improvements versus placebo for all doses tested. This preplanned analysis was based on observations from several of the gefapixant studies that suggested P2X3 antagonism was most efficacious in patients with the highest baseline cough frequency [25].

In post-hoc analysis of a phase 2a study, among patients who reported cough-related urinary incontinence at baseline, 11%, 15%, and 21% of those treated with 12.5 mg, 50 mg, and 200 mg camlipixant, respectively, reported no cough-related urinary incontinence at day 29 (compared with 3% with placebo) [168]. As of 2024, camlipixant is being evaluated in two large-scale phase 3 studies, again in patients selected for higher cough frequencies [25].

### **Other Novel Antitussives Under Investigation**

The studies completed to date investigating P2X3 antagonists have typically found that between one-quarter and one-third of patients do not experience the 30% reduction in cough frequency thought to be the meaningful clinical threshold, suggesting some heterogeneity in the mechanisms underlying refractory chronic cough. Furthermore, patients with less frequent/severe coughing than those recruited to these trials may not benefit from treatments interrupting the ATP-P2X3 axis. Therefore, treatments with alternative modes of action are required to optimally manage patients with refractory chronic cough [25].

### **Sodium Channel Blockade**

Lidocaine non-selectively blocks voltage-gated sodium channels important in the initiation of action potentials and their conduction and is a local anesthetic agent in routine topical use to reduce coughing during bronchoscopy. Case reports and case series have also described the use of nebulized lidocaine as an antitussive to treat refractory chronic cough [169].

In a three-way crossover study of single-dose lidocaine in refractory chronic cough, lidocaine throat spray reduced coughing by about 50% and was more effective than nebulized lidocaine, probably because nebulization into the lower airways has an irritant effect and evokes coughing initially [169]. The antitussive effects of lidocaine spray are relatively short lived and also associated with numbness in the mouth and lips, preventing patients from safely eating after treatment. Efforts have been made to develop similar therapies with a longer duration of action and without loss of sensation [25].

A novel approach to sodium channel blockade has been developed using a compound that is only active in blocking sodium channels after entering neurons via large-pore ion channels, such as P2X3 channels. As of 2024, a phase 2a clinical trial has been performed but the results are not yet published.

### **TRPM8 Agonism**

Activation of TRPM8 ion channels produces cooling sensations. One new therapy has used an orally dissolving tablet containing a TRPM8 agonist (AX-8) placed on the back of the tongue to act as a counter irritant to the sensations of throat irritation reported by many patients with refractory chronic cough. In a randomized controlled trial, AX-8 reduced cough frequency, but not significantly over eight hours, the duration of action suggested by a previous open-label study. However, the effect was significant over four hours and exaggerated in those patients reporting greater throat discomfort, consistent with the proposed mechanism of action. Further studies in this subgroup of patients are hoped to confirm efficacy [25].

On day 1, AX-8 reduced cough frequency within 15 minutes and more than placebo over two and four hours, but not eight hours. In participants with baseline throat discomfort, reduction in cough frequency was significant over 24 hours, with a maximum reduction compared to placebo of 43% over two hours. Over 14 days, AX-8 significantly improved patient-reported outcomes and the safety profile was good with no serious adverse events. This suggests that TRPM8 agonism has potential for control of refractory/unexplained chronic cough as an alternative or adjunct to other therapies, especially in those patients complaining of cough driven by throat sensations [170].

### **NK1 Antagonism**

Following a positive study testing aprepitant as a cough treatment in patients with lung cancer, there has been interest in the potential antitussive effects of centrally acting neurokinin-1 (NK-1) antagonists. Following a negative trial in refractory chronic cough, a double-blind randomized controlled trial is in progress testing the effects of orvepitant in patients with cough associated with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis [25].



## NONPHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY

### Speech and Language Therapy

Speech and language therapy techniques were first described as improving chronic cough in a randomized controlled trial in 87 patients with refractory chronic cough. The intervention appeared to have positive impact on cough, voice, throat symptoms, and symptom limitation after four therapy sessions over two months. Another study investigated a similar intervention delivered by speech and language therapists and physiotherapists. Compared with sham therapy, LCQ score improved by 1.5 points. Cough frequency improved by 40% more than in the sham-treated arm at four weeks and seemed to be maintained at three months. No larger-scale trials have been completed [25].

Speech and language therapy is a complex intervention, comprising components of education, cough suppression techniques, vocal hygiene, and psychoeducational counseling. Thus, it is difficult to standardize the intervention, and it is not clear whether all or just some of the components are essential for efficacy. In practice, the therapy seems to be most effective when delivered by experienced therapists, who may not be widely available. There is also a question about the durability of the effects over longer timescales when patients may not continue to practice the techniques [25].

The speech and language therapy approach to the management of chronic cough involves four steps: education, vocal hygiene, cough control/suppression training, and psychoeducational counseling [19].

#### Education

Patients are provided education on the biology of coughing, chronic cough, and cough hypersensitivity. The negative effects of repeated coughing and throat clearing are explained [19].

#### Vocal Hygiene

Vocal and laryngeal hygiene and hydration are advised with a reduction in caffeine and alcohol intake. Nasal breathing with nasal douching may be recommended with nasal steam inhalation [19].

### Cough Control/Suppression Training

Following identification of patient cough triggers, patients are taught a range of suppression strategies, including forced/dry swallow, sipping water, chewing gum, or sucking non-medicated sweets. Breathing pattern re-education is used to promote relaxed abdominal breathing while inhaling through the nose [19].

### Psychoeducational Counseling

Behavior modification is used to reduce over-awareness of the need to cough and facilitate an individual's internalization of control over their cough and to help manage stress and anxiety [19].

### Local Injection Therapies

The experience of superior laryngeal nerve block by the injection of local anesthetic agents and corticosteroids has been described retrospectively following implementation in several clinics. In 2024, a small single-blind placebo-controlled study was performed comparing this treatment in 10 patients injected with active treatment and 7 with placebo, finding improvements in cough VAS and LCQ scores. Transient sensations of globus (lump in the throat) and soreness at the site of inject were the main adverse effects. Laryngeal botulinum toxin injections have also been reported to produce improvements in series of patients in clinical care, but no controlled studies have been performed. The broad safety of these interventions and duration of any effect currently remains unclear [25].

---

## CONCLUSION

Chronic cough affects roughly 10% of adults in the United States [32]. These individuals can cough hundreds to thousands of times every day, often with uncontrollable bouts of coughing triggered by laughing, speaking, or changes in ambient temperature. This can continue for many years or decades, leading to substantial physical and emotional symptoms, including fatigue, urinary incontinence, cough syncope, dysphonia, depression, anxiety, embarrassment, social isolation, and severely diminished quality of life [28; 40; 64].

Customer Information and Evaluation are located on pages 119–120.

**SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS**  
**#94820 CHRONIC COUGH IN ADULTS**

**After reviewing the course, complete the following Self-Assessment Questions. Receive immediate feedback by reviewing the Study Guide provided on pages 68–70. Please record the number of questions you correctly answered on the Evaluation. The Evaluation must be completed in order to receive credit for this course.**

*This 10 contact hour activity must be completed by July 31, 2027.*

- A cough lasting seven weeks is categorized as**
  - acute.*
  - subacute.*
  - chronic.*
  - post-chronic.*
- Cough hypersensitivity syndrome is**
  - cough that persists despite guideline-based treatment of the presumed underlying cause(s).*
  - cough triggered by innocuous stimuli (e.g., laughing, talking, changes in ambient temperature).*
  - a distinct, often debilitating sensation of irritation or “itch” in the throat or chest that precede cough and is not satiated by coughing.*
  - a disorder characterized by cough triggered by mildly tussive or innocuous stimuli, with features of allotussia, hypertussia, and/or laryngeal paresthesia.*
- Which of the following is an objective tool for cough measurement?**
  - Visual Analog Scale (VAS)*
  - Cough Severity Diary (CSD)*
  - Leicester Cough Monitor (LCM)*
  - Cough Quality of Life Questionnaire (CQLQ)*
- What is the approximate prevalence of chronic cough among U.S. adults?**
  - 1%*
  - 10%*
  - 25%*
  - 50%*
- Which of the following is a risk factor for the development of chronic cough?**
  - Frailty*
  - Male sex*
  - Younger age*
  - Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor use*
- Cough-induced rib fractures, a painful and potentially serious complication of chronic cough, often involve ribs**
  - 1 and 2.*
  - 3 through 5.*
  - 5 through 7.*
  - 7 through 9.*
- Studies of patients with chronic cough have reported high rates of**
  - bipolar disorder.*
  - anxiety and depression.*
  - substance use disorders.*
  - ADHD and obsessive-compulsive disorder.*
- Which of the following statements regarding the natural history and clinical course of chronic Cough is TRUE?**
  - The natural history of cough hypersensitivity is clearly established.*
  - Most patients with chronic Cough are diagnosed and effectively treated within months.*
  - Chronic cough is related to an accelerated FEV1 decline over time, regardless of smoking history or COPD diagnosis.*
  - The relationship between chronic cough and worse clinical outcomes has a clear pathophysiological explanation.*
- What are the phases of cough?**
  - Diastole and systole*
  - Waxing, full, and waning*
  - Inspiration, compression, and expiration*
  - Latent period, contraction, and relaxation*

10. Excessive coughing is a consequence of increased activation of neuronal cough-mediating pathways due to
- Neuroplastic changes in the CNS
  - Neuroplastic changes in vagal afferent fibers
  - Excessive activation of airway vagal afferent terminals by chemical or mechanical irritants
  - All of the above
11. Which of the following statements best describes the concept of cough hypersensitivity syndrome as it relates to chronic cough and chronic pain?
- Cough hypersensitivity syndrome is primarily characterized by a direct infection of the vagal afferent fibers.
  - The primary feature of cough hypersensitivity syndrome is a lack of sensitivity to normally non-irritating stimuli.
  - Cough hypersensitivity syndrome and chronic pain both involve a direct inflammation of the brainstem's cough reflex pathways, leading to excessive coughing.
  - Chronic cough in cough hypersensitivity syndrome is similar to chronic pain in that both involve peripheral and central sensitization, which alters sensory processing in the brain.
12. The first step in evaluating cough is to
- identify its etiology.
  - determine its duration.
  - start empirical/diagnostic therapy.
  - evaluate impact on patient quality of life.
13. All of the following are “red flag” signs/symptoms in patients with chronic cough that warrant further evaluation, EXCEPT:
- Hoarseness
  - Hemoptysis
  - History of asthma
  - Systemic symptoms (e.g., fever, weight loss)
14. Which of the following diagnostic tests is recommended for patients with chronic cough suspected to be related to gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)?
- Spirometry
  - Nasopharyngoscopy
  - Empiric treatment trial
  - Bronchoprovocation challenge
15. Which of the following statements accurately reflects the diagnostic approach for differentiating between classic asthma, cough-variant asthma, and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis?
- Abnormal spirometry findings are used to diagnose nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis and contraindicate further bronchial challenge testing.
  - Classic asthma can be definitively diagnosed with a single methacholine challenge test, while cough-variant asthma is ruled out by normal spirometry findings.
  - Normal lung function testing rules out classic asthma and confirms nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, while abnormal spirometry indicates the need for further bronchial challenge testing.
  - The absence of bronchial hyperreactivity to methacholine challenge in patients with normal physical exams and spirometry suggests nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, while a negative airway responsiveness can exclude cough-variant asthma.
16. In patients with negative physical examination and spirometry findings, what testing should be performed to confirm airway hyper-reactivity consistent with symptomatic asthma?
- Laryngoscopy (fiberoptic)
  - Chest computed tomography (CT)
  - Peripheral blood eosinophil count
  - Bronchial challenge testing (e.g., methacholine)
17. Which of the following statements best describes the treatable traits approach in managing airway disease?
- Traits in the treatable traits approach are defined as clinically relevant, measurable, and treatable.
  - The treatable traits approach focuses solely on traditional diagnostic labels such as asthma and COPD to determine treatment plans.
  - In the treatable traits approach, only phenotypes are considered for treatment, while endotypes are not relevant in identifying treatment targets.
  - The treatable traits approach is limited to identifying and treating only those traits that are associated with conventional asthma and COPD diagnoses.

Self-Assessment questions continue on next page →

18. In patients with chronic cough in asthma, the first-line treatment is
- A) biologics.
  - B) allergy medications.
  - C) inhaled corticosteroid with or without long-acting beta-agonist
  - D) a leukotriene receptor antagonist or long-acting muscarinic antagonist.
19. Which of the following best describes the systematic approach for empiric treatment of chronic cough according to the ACCP guidelines?
- A) Empiric treatment begins with the use of oral leukotriene inhibitors and only moves to other treatments if there is no response.
  - B) Initial empiric treatment involves directly starting bronchoprovocation testing and, if positive, initiating inhaled corticosteroids without first addressing upper airway cough syndrome.
  - C) In cases where cough persists despite treatment, the guidelines recommend immediate referral to a cough specialist before evaluating for nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis or GERD.
  - D) The treatment approach starts with a sequential and additive focus on upper airway cough syndrome, followed by evaluation for asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, and then GERD if needed.
20. Chronic cough in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
- A) is relatively rare.
  - B) is one of the easier symptoms to control.
  - C) predicts disease progression and mortality.
  - D) is less distressing than breathlessness for patients.
21. Wheezing and NSAID hypersensitivity are features of which rhinitis phenotype?
- A) Allergic
  - B) GERD-associated
  - C) Nonallergic noninfectious
  - D) Chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyposis
22. According to the 2016 ACCP clinical practice guideline for reflux-associated chronic cough, when should esophageal manometry and pH-metry be performed?
- A) As a first-line diagnostic test for all patients with chronic cough, regardless of response to antireflux therapy
  - B) Only in patients who have not responded to a six-month antireflux trial, regardless of their surgical management plans
  - C) In patients who have responded partially to antireflux medication but do not have a clear diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux
  - D) In patients with suspected reflux cough who are refractory to a three-month antireflux trial and are being considered for surgical management, or in those with strong clinical suspicion warranting diagnostic testing for gastroesophageal reflux
23. Which of the following is a common pitfall in the management of chronic cough associated with upper airway cough syndrome?
- A) Failing to consider NSAID-exacerbated disease
  - B) Failing to consider “silent” upper airway cough syndrome when a patient does not sense a postnasal drip or realize their frequent throat clearing
  - C) Failing to recognize that upper airway cough syndrome (also asthma or GERD) can present as a cough-phlegm syndrome, misdiagnosed as chronic bronchitis
  - D) All of the above
24. Which of the following agents is recommended by the American College of Chest Physicians for neuromodulator treatment of refractory/unexplained chronic cough?
- A) Baclofen
  - B) Gabapentin
  - C) Amitriptyline
  - D) Low-dose morphine slow-release
25. The usual starting dose of pregabalin for chronic cough is
- A) 25 mg twice daily.
  - B) 75 mg twice daily.
  - C) 250 mg twice daily.
  - D) 100 mg three times daily.

26. In clinical trials, what is the most common side effect of nalbuphine extended-release?
- A) Nausea
  - B) Fatigue
  - C) Dizziness
  - D) Constipation
27. Which of the following statements accurately describes the role and findings related to gefapixant, a P2X3 receptor antagonist, in the treatment of refractory chronic cough?
- A) Gefapixant, a P2X3 receptor antagonist, has been shown to provide only modest reductions in chronic cough and does not address peripheral hypersensitivity.
  - B) The endogenous ligand ATP is not involved in the action of gefapixant, and the efficacy of P2X3 antagonists in refractory chronic cough remains unproven.
  - C) Gefapixant primarily acts centrally to reduce cough and is not effective against cough induced by chemical irritants, temperature changes, or mechanical stimuli.
  - D) P2X3 receptors, activated by ATP, are found on sensory afferent nerve fibers and play a key role in peripheral hypersensitivity; gefapixant has demonstrated dramatic reductions in cough frequency in clinical trials.
28. Which of the following accurately describes the use of lidocaine in the context of treating chronic cough?
- A) Lidocaine primarily functions as a systemic analgesic and is not effective for treating coughs associated with bronchoscopy or chronic cough.
  - B) Lidocaine selectively blocks specific types of sodium channels to reduce coughing during bronchoscopy, and it is not used for chronic cough.
  - C) Lidocaine's main role in treating chronic cough is through its action as a central nervous system depressant rather than its local anesthetic properties.
  - D) Lidocaine is a local anesthetic that non-selectively blocks voltage-gated sodium channels, which helps in reducing coughing during bronchoscopy and has been used in nebulized form to treat refractory chronic cough.
29. Which of the following statements best describes the challenges and considerations associated with speech and language therapy for chronic cough?
- A) Speech and language therapy is most effective when delivered by novice therapists and does not require continued practice by patients to maintain its effects.
  - B) Speech and language therapy for chronic cough involves a complex, multifaceted approach, making it difficult to standardize and assess the necessity of each component.
  - C) The intervention is typically standardized and easy to implement, with clear evidence of its long-term effectiveness regardless of the therapist's experience or patient adherence.
  - D) Speech and language therapy is a straightforward intervention with standardized components, including education and vocal hygiene, and has clearly defined long-term efficacy.
30. What vocal hygiene approaches are recommended in the treatment of refractory/unexplained chronic cough?
- A) Optimal hydration
  - B) Nasal breathing with nasal douching
  - C) Reduction in caffeine and alcohol intake
  - D) All of the above

# STUDY GUIDE

## COURSE #94820 CHRONIC COUGH IN ADULTS

This Study Guide has been included to provide immediate feedback about your achievement for the course learning objectives. The correct answers for the Self-Assessment Questions and their locations within the text are indicated below.

- 1. A cough lasting seven weeks is categorized as**  
B) *subacute.* (Background; Table 1)
- 2. Cough hypersensitivity syndrome is**  
D) *a disorder characterized by cough triggered by mildly tussive or innocuous stimuli, with features of allotussia, hypertussia, and/or laryngeal paresthesia.* (Background; Table 1)
- 3. Which of the following is an objective tool for cough measurement?**  
C) *Leicester Cough Monitor (LCM)* (Cough Severity Measures; Table 2)
- 4. What is the approximate prevalence of chronic cough among U.S. adults?**  
B) *10%* (Epidemiology; Prevalence)
- 5. Which of the following is a risk factor for the development of chronic cough?**  
D) *Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor use* (Epidemiology; Risk Factors)
- 6. Cough-induced rib fractures, a painful and potentially serious complication of chronic cough, often involve ribs**  
C) *5 through 7.* (Patient Impact of Chronic Cough; Physical Impact; Fracture)
- 7. Studies of patients with chronic cough have reported high rates of**  
B) *anxiety and depression.* (Patient Impact of Chronic Cough; Psychosocial and Quality of Life Impact)
- 8. Which of the following statements regarding the natural history and clinical course of chronic Cough is TRUE?**  
C) *Chronic cough is related to an accelerated FEV1 decline over time, regardless of smoking history or COPD diagnosis.* (Natural History and Disease Course)
- 9. What are the phases of cough?**  
C) *Inspiration, compression, and expiration* (Pathophysiology of Chronic Cough; Normal Physiology; The Cough Reflex)
- 10. Excessive coughing is a consequence of increased activation of neuronal cough-mediating pathways due to**  
D) *All of the above* (Pathophysiology of Chronic Cough; Pathophysiology of Chronic Cough and Cough Reflex Hypersensitivity)
- 11. Which of the following statements best describes the concept of cough hypersensitivity syndrome as it relates to chronic cough and chronic pain?**  
D) *Chronic cough in cough hypersensitivity syndrome is similar to chronic pain in that both involve peripheral and central sensitization, which alters sensory processing in the brain.* (Pathophysiology of Chronic Cough; Pathophysiology of Chronic Cough and Cough Reflex Hypersensitivity; Cough Hypersensitivity Syndrome)
- 12. The first step in evaluating cough is to**  
B) *determine its duration.* (Initial Evaluation of Chronic Cough; Definitions of Cough)
- 13. All of the following are “red flag” signs/symptoms in patients with chronic cough that warrant further evaluation, EXCEPT:**  
C) *History of asthma* (Initial Evaluation of Chronic Cough; “Red Flag” Assessment of Serious Underlying Causes of Cough)

14. Which of the following diagnostic tests is recommended for patients with chronic cough suspected to be related to gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)?  
C) Empiric treatment trial (Initial Evaluation of Chronic Cough; Table 3)
15. Which of the following statements accurately reflects the diagnostic approach for differentiating between classic asthma, cough-variant asthma, and nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis?  
D) The absence of bronchial hyperreactivity to methacholine challenge in patients with normal physical exams and spirometry suggests nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, while a negative airway responsiveness can exclude cough-variant asthma. (Initial Evaluation of Chronic Cough; Diagnostic Tests)
16. In patients with negative physical examination and spirometry findings, what testing should be performed to confirm airway hyper-reactivity consistent with symptomatic asthma?  
D) Bronchial challenge testing (e.g., methacholine) (Initial Evaluation of Chronic Cough; Diagnostic Tests; Airway Hyper-Reactivity Measures)
17. Which of the following statements best describes the treatable traits approach in managing airway disease?  
A) Traits in the treatable traits approach are defined as clinically relevant, measurable, and treatable. (Identification and Management of Underlying Etiologies; The “Treatable Traits” Approach in Chronic Airway Diseases)
18. In patients with chronic cough in asthma, the first-line treatment is  
C) inhaled corticosteroid with or without long-acting beta-agonist (Treatment; Chronic Airway Inflammation)
19. Which of the following best describes the systematic approach for empiric treatment of chronic cough according to the ACCP guidelines?  
D) The treatment approach starts with a sequential and additive focus on upper airway cough syndrome, followed by evaluation for asthma, nonasthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, and then GERD if needed. (Treatment; Empiric Treatment Approach)
20. Chronic cough in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis  
C) predicts disease progression and mortality. (Treatment; Lower Airway Etiologies of Chronic Cough and Management; Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis)
21. Wheezing and NSAID hypersensitivity are features of which rhinitis phenotype?  
D) Chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyposis (Treatment; Table 5)
22. According to the 2016 ACCP clinical practice guideline for reflux-associated chronic cough, when should esophageal manometry and pH-metry be performed?  
D) In patients with suspected reflux cough who are refractory to a three-month antireflux trial and are being considered for surgical management, or in those with strong clinical suspicion warranting diagnostic testing for gastroesophageal reflux (Treatment; Reflux Disorder Etiologies of Chronic Cough and Their Management; Management)
23. Which of the following is a common pitfall in the management of chronic cough associated with upper airway cough syndrome?  
D) All of the above (Treatment; Table 7)
24. Which of the following agents is recommended by the American College of Chest Physicians for neuromodulator treatment of refractory/unexplained chronic cough?  
B) Gabapentin (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Table 8)
25. The usual starting dose of pregabalin for chronic cough is  
A) 25 mg twice daily. (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Pharmacotherapy; Gabapentinoids)
26. In clinical trials, what is the most common side effect of nalbuphine extended-release?  
A) Nausea (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Pharmacotherapy; Pharmacotherapy for Chronic Cough in Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis; Nalbuphine)

27. Which of the following statements accurately describes the role and findings related to gefapixant, a P2X3 receptor antagonist, in the treatment of refractory chronic cough?
- D) P2X3 receptors, activated by ATP, are found on sensory afferent nerve fibers and play a key role in peripheral hypersensitivity; gefapixant has demonstrated dramatic reductions in cough frequency in clinical trials. (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Investigational Pharmacotherapies; P2X3 Receptor Antagonists)
28. Which of the following accurately describes the use of lidocaine in the context of treating chronic cough?
- D) Lidocaine is a local anesthetic that non-selectively blocks voltage-gated sodium channels, which helps in reducing coughing during bronchoscopy and has been used in nebulized form to treat refractory chronic cough. (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Investigational Pharmacotherapies; Other Novel Antitussives Under Investigation; Sodium Channel Blockade)
29. Which of the following statements best describes the challenges and considerations associated with speech and language therapy for chronic cough?
- B) Speech and language therapy for chronic cough involves a complex, multifaceted approach, making it difficult to standardize and assess the necessity of each component. (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Nonpharmacologic Therapy; Speech and Language Therapy)
30. What vocal hygiene approaches are recommended in the treatment of refractory/unexplained chronic cough?
- D) All of the above (Treatment of Refractory Chronic Cough; Nonpharmacologic Therapy; Speech and Language Therapy; Vocal Hygiene)



# Pathophysiology: The Hepatobiliary System

Includes 3 Pharmacotherapeutic/Pharmacology Hours

## Audience

This course is designed for nurses in all practice settings.

## Course Objective

As health care becomes more complex, it is essential that the theoretical concepts of the basis of illness (pathophysiology) be well understood. The purpose of this course is to reinforce the scientific rationales for the interventions nurses perform and the decisions nurses make as patients move through the ever-changing struggle with their illness.

## Learning Objectives

Upon completion of this course, you should be able to:

1. Identify and describe the anatomical structure of the liver.
2. Explain the liver's functions, integrating how these processes inter-relate with the hepatic and biliary systems.
3. Describe the anatomical location and structure and regulatory mechanisms of the gallbladder.
4. Discuss the pathophysiologic effects of hepatobiliary dysfunction, including how these conditions impact overall health and clinical management.
5. Review the impact of hepatobiliary dysfunction on the integumentary, cardiovascular, and neurologic systems.
6. Analyze how psychosocial and lifestyle factors influence the risk and progression of hepatobiliary disorders.
7. Conduct a comprehensive nursing assessment by effectively gathering and analyzing subjective and objective data related to hepatobiliary function.
8. Outline and interpret various diagnostic studies for hepatobiliary disorders, including the purpose, procedure, and nursing implications for advanced diagnostic tests.
9. Identify and formulate nursing diagnoses for patients with hepatic or biliary dysfunction based on comprehensive assessments.
10. Outline a comprehensive nursing care plan for patients with hepatobiliary dysfunction.
11. Differentiate between congenital disorders of the hepatic and biliary systems, specifically Gilbert syndrome and Alagille syndrome.
12. Discuss cirrhosis, including demonstrating an ability to apply appropriate therapeutic measures for managing complications and execute specific nursing interventions.
13. Differentiate between various forms of alcohol-induced liver disease.
14. Evaluate the role of metabolic dysfunction in the development of metabolic dysfunction-associated steatotic liver disease (MASLD).
15. Compare and contrast primary and secondary biliary cholangitis, including approaches to management.
16. Identify and differentiate between various infectious and inflammatory disorders of the hepatobiliary system.
17. Describe the various neoplastic and obstructive disorders affecting the hepatobiliary system.
18. Outline the key criteria for liver transplantation candidacy and the processes involved in donor organ selection and transplantation.

## Faculty

**Jane C. Norman, RN, MSN, CNE, PhD**, received her undergraduate education at the University of Tennessee, Knoxville campus. There she completed a double major in Sociology and English. She completed an Associate of Science in Nursing at the University of Tennessee, Nashville campus and began her nursing career at Vanderbilt University Medical Center. Jane received her Masters in Medical-Surgical Nursing from Vanderbilt University. In 1978, she took her first faculty position and served as program director for an associate degree program. (A complete biography can be found at NetCE.com.)

Mary Franks, MSN, APRN, FNP-C, is a board-certified Family Nurse Practitioner and NetCE Nurse Planner. She works as a Nurse Division Planner for NetCE and a per diem nurse practitioner in urgent care in Central Illinois. Mary graduated with her Associate's degree in nursing from Carl Sandburg College, her BSN from OSF Saint Francis Medical Center College of Nursing in 2013, and her MSN with a focus on nursing education from Chamberlain University in 2017. (A complete biography can be found at NetCE.com.)

### Faculty Disclosure

Contributing faculty, Jane C. Norman, RN, MSN, CNE, PhD, has disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

Contributing faculty, Mary Franks, MSN, APRN, FNP-C, has disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

### Division Planner

Margo A. Halm, RN, PhD, ACNS-BC, FAAN

### Senior Director of Development and Academic Affairs

Sarah Campbell

### Division Planner/Director Disclosure

The division planner and director have disclosed no relevant financial relationship with any product manufacturer or service provider mentioned.

### Accreditations & Approvals



In support of improving patient care, NetCE is jointly accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), the Accreditation Council for Pharmacy Education (ACPE), and the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC), to provide continuing education for the healthcare team.

### Designations of Credit

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 15 ANCC contact hours.

NetCE designates this continuing education activity for 3 pharmacotherapeutic/pharmacology contact hours.

AACN Synergy CERP Category A.

### Individual State Nursing Approvals

In addition to states that accept ANCC, NetCE is approved as a provider of continuing education in nursing by: Alabama, Provider #ABNP0353 (valid through 07/29/2025); Arkansas, Provider #50-2405; California, BRN Provider #CEP9784; California, LVN Provider #V10662; California, PT Provider #V10842; District of Columbia, Provider #50-2405; Florida, Provider #50-2405; Georgia, Provider #50-2405; Kentucky, Provider #7-0054 (valid through 12/31/2025); South Carolina, Provider #50-2405; West Virginia, RN and APRN Provider #50-2405.

### About the Sponsor

The purpose of NetCE is to provide challenging curricula to assist healthcare professionals to raise their levels of expertise while fulfilling their continuing education requirements, thereby improving the quality of healthcare.

Our contributing faculty members have taken care to ensure that the information and recommendations are accurate and compatible with the standards generally accepted at the time of publication. The publisher disclaims any liability, loss or damage incurred as a consequence, directly or indirectly, of the use and application of any of the contents. Participants are cautioned about the potential risk of using limited knowledge when integrating new techniques into practice.

### Disclosure Statement

It is the policy of NetCE not to accept commercial support. Furthermore, commercial interests are prohibited from distributing or providing access to this activity to learners.

### How to Receive Credit

- Read the following course.
- Complete the Self-Assessment Questions at the end of the course. (No test required.)
- Complete the Evaluation.
- Return your Customer Information/Evaluation and payment to NetCE by mail, or complete online at [www.NetCE.com/PA25](http://www.NetCE.com/PA25).
- A full Works Cited list is available online at [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com).

---

## INTRODUCTION

---

The liver, the gallbladder, and the exocrine pancreas are classified as accessory organs of the gastrointestinal tract and digestion. They introduce digestive hormones and enzymes into the alimentary canal, ensuring that the nutrients critical to life can be absorbed selectively by the small intestines into the bloodstream. In addition to producing digestive secretions, the liver and the pancreas have other important functions. The exocrine pancreas, for example, supplies the insulin and glucagon needed in cell metabolism, whereas the liver synthesizes glucose, plasma proteins, and blood clotting factors and is responsible for the degradation and elimination of drugs and hormones, among other functions. The liver and gallbladder perform several regulatory functions essential to the maintenance of homeostasis. The liver synthesizes a number of substances, including coagulation factors that are vital to life. The gallbladder plays an important role in the digestive process, in particular the digestion of fats. Although the human body can survive the loss of the gallbladder, survival without a liver is not possible [1; 2]. This course focuses on functions and disorders of the liver, the biliary tract, and the gallbladder.

---

## STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL INTER-RELATIONSHIPS

---

The hepatic and biliary systems are both structurally and functionally inter-related. The liver, the largest of the internal organs, performs the following functions [3]:

- Storage and filtration of blood (a vascular function)
- Production of bile (a regulatory function)
- Removal of bilirubin from the body (an excretory function)
- Metabolism of carbohydrates, fats, and protein (a metabolic function)
- Storage of vitamins A, D, and B12
- Synthesis of coagulation factors
- Detoxification of chemicals

The principal function of the gallbladder is to store and release bile [3].

## STRUCTURE OF THE LIVER

The normal liver of an adult weighs about 1,500 g. The wedge-shaped organ lies in the upper right quadrant of the abdominal cavity, where it is protected by the rib cage. The superior surface underlies the diaphragm. The posterior and inferior surfaces together are generally referred to as the visceral surface. The right visceral surface is in contact with portions of the colon, the kidneys, the adrenal glands, and the duodenum; the left visceral surface is bordered by the stomach and spleen [3; 4].

The liver is divided into two major regions, the right and left lobes, separated by fissures on the inferior surface on the liver. On the posterior and inferior surfaces of the right lobe are two smaller lobes: the caudate and quadrate lobes. The gallbladder and the inferior vena cava lie in two shallow fossae that parallel the fissures. Veins, arteries, nerves, and lymphatic vessels enter and leave the liver through a space between the caudate and quadrate lobes [3; 4].

Except for the so-called bare area, which rests against the diaphragm, the liver is covered by visceral peritoneum. A thin layer of connective tissue extends into each lobe to divide the liver into 50,000–100,000 liver lobules. These tiny structures, a few millimeters in length and 1–2 mm in diameter, are the functional units of the liver [3; 4].

### The Functional Liver Lobule

Each liver lobule is composed of plate like “spokes” of hepatic cells that radiate from a “hub” or central vein that passes through the connective tissue between lobules. The central veins are branches of the portal vein that, together with the portal artery, furnish the blood supply of the liver. Bile is manufactured in the hepatic plates, each of which is generally two cells thick. Tiny bile canaliculi, or bile channels, lying between the hepatic plates carry the bile to bile ducts. Like tributaries forming ever larger streams, the bile ducts merge to form larger ducts. Eventually, they form two hepatic ducts, one from the right lobe and one from the left. These in turn join to form a single hepatic duct that merges with the cystic duct to form the common bile duct. Bile manufactured by the liver, together with bile stored and later secreted by the gallbladder, leaves the hepatic-biliary system via the common bile duct [5].

The septa between lobules contain venules and arterioles, both of which drain into the hepatic sinusoids, where venous and arterial blood mingle. This mingling is related to the detoxifying and metabolic functions of the hepatic system. Plasma, including proteins, can diffuse out of the blood. For example, nutritive or toxic substances carried from the intestine in the blood diffuse through the epithelial lining of the sinusoids into the hepatic cells, where they are metabolized, stored, or altered. The sinusoids are also lined by Kupffer cells, phagocytic cells that remove bacteria and other foreign substances from blood that passes through the liver [5].

### Hepatic Circulation

The liver is richly supplied with both arterial and venous blood. Each minute, approximately 1,100 mL arrives from the hepatic portal vein and 400 mL from the hepatic artery to mix in the sinusoids before returning to the heart via the inferior vena cava. Portal venous blood coming from the intestines has a low concentration of oxygen but a high concentration of substances absorbed by the intestine during digestion. Blood coming from the hepatic artery is high in oxygen but low in nutrients. The pressure of blood in the portal and hepatic veins is low, allowing easy diffusion of nutrients and other substances

along the concentration gradients. Oxygen-rich blood from the hepatic artery maintains the integrity of the liver; if perfusion is absent or diminished, necrosis of hepatic cells will occur [5].

Arterial and venous vessels, bile ducts, and lymphatic vessels travel together through the liver in so-called portal tracts. The direction of flow is from the portal tracts through the sinusoids and into the central veins of the liver lobules. Thus, oxygen and nutrient supply is richest in the hepatic cells nearest the portal tracts and poorest near the central veins. The cells adjacent to the central veins, due to their relatively poor nutritional state, are more susceptible to damage from circulatory disturbances (e.g., shock, heart failure) and more vulnerable to toxins than the outermost cells [5].

### FUNCTIONS OF THE LIVER

As discussed, the hepatic system has vascular, secretory, and metabolic functions. It stores some vitamins and iron, detoxifies chemicals, and forms substances necessary for the coagulation of blood [5; 6].

#### Vascular Functions

The liver is capable of storing a considerable quantity of blood, the amount depending on the pressure relationships in the arteries and veins. If pressure in the hepatic veins increases by a few millimeters of mercury (e.g., in the presence of congestive heart failure, cirrhosis, or hepatic congestion), as much as 300–400 mL of blood may be stored. If hemorrhage occurs anywhere in the body, the liver releases this stored blood into the circulatory system to maintain circulatory volume [6].

The phagocytic Kupffer cells lining the sinusoids normally remove 99% to 100% of bacteria from blood entering the liver. Kupffer cells multiply in response to increased levels of foreign particles in the blood. Because blood entering the liver through the portal vein contains intestinal bacteria, the Kupffer cells play an important role in the body's defense against infection. Any condition that damages these cells or inhibits their replication increases the body's susceptibility to infection [6].

#### Secretory Functions

The hepatic cells of each liver lobule continually secrete small amounts of bile, a thick, greenish-yellow, slightly alkaline fluid. When first secreted from the liver through the canaliculi, bile is composed of water, bile salts, bilirubin, cholesterol, fatty acids, and lecithin as well as sodium, potassium, calcium, chloride, and bicarbonate ions [5; 6].

Bile is concentrated in the gallbladder, which contracts during digestion to send it into the duodenum, where it functions as kind of "biological detergent" to emulsify fat particles. The bile salts decrease the surface tension of fat particles so the agitation of the intestinal tract can break them into small globules easily acted upon by digestive enzymes. Lecithin acts similarly. Fat is digested much more slowly if bile is not present [5; 6].

Bile salts also improve absorption of lipids. The salts combine with fatty acids and monoglycerides to form small complexes called micelles. The ion charges provided by the bile salts enhance diffusion of the micelles across the intestinal mucosa into the bloodstream [5; 6].

If absorption of fats is diminished because of absence of bile, vitamins A, D, E, and K, which are fat-soluble, cannot be absorbed. Bile salts are "recycled" from 15 to 20 times in a process known as enterohepatic circulation. An estimated 90% to 95% of bile salts secreted are reabsorbed in the distal ileum and carried in the portal vein back to the hepatic cells, which reabsorb and then resecret them [5; 6].

#### Excretory Functions

Bilirubin (bile pigment), a major waste product of hemoglobin metabolism, is excreted by the liver. Normally, erythrocytes have a lifespan of about 120 days. They are then broken down by the reticuloendothelial cells, and the iron (heme) from the worn-out red cells is conserved for reuse in the synthesis of fresh hemoglobin. The remaining iron-free pigment is free (unconjugated) bilirubin, which is continually present in the bloodstream in small quantities. As blood passes through the liver, unconjugated bilirubin is removed. It is then combined (conjugated) with other substances and excreted via the bile ducts; a small amount of conjugated bilirubin returns to the blood [1; 7].

Conjugated bilirubin is more soluble and less toxic than unconjugated bilirubin. In the intestines, conjugated bilirubin is converted into a highly soluble substance called urobilinogen, which is excreted primarily in the feces in an oxidized form known as stercobilin. About 5% of urobilinogen is absorbed into the bloodstream and excreted via the kidneys in an oxidized form called urobilin. Because stercobilin gives feces their brownish color, clay-colored stools are a classic sign of biliary tract abnormalities [1; 7].

#### Metabolic Functions

##### Carbohydrate Metabolism

The liver plays a major role in carbohydrate metabolism. One aspect of this role is a glucose buffer function that contributes to the maintenance of normal blood sugar levels. The liver can remove excess glucose from the blood, store it as glycogen, and reconvert and release it as glucose in response to hypoglycemia. If blood glucose concentrations fall and glycogen is not available, the liver can convert proteins or amino acids to glucose, a process known as gluconeogenesis. The liver is also capable of converting galactose to glucose [1; 2].

##### Fat (Lipid) Metabolism

Synthesis of fat from carbohydrates and proteins occurs primarily in the liver. The lipoprotein produced in this process is transported in the bloodstream to the body's adipose tissue or storage. The liver is also capable of rapid metabolism of ingested fat in response to energy requirements. The liver

can also synthesize lipoproteins, cholesterol, and other phospholipids [1; 2].

### **Protein Metabolism**

Before amino acids can be converted into carbohydrates or fat or used to supply caloric needs, a process known as deamination (liberation of ammonia) must occur. The liver is the principal site of deamination and the only site where ammonia is detoxified by conversion into urea. In addition, nearly all the plasma proteins are synthesized in the liver, as are several nonessential amino acids. Serum protein determination measures the liver's ability to maintain a normal level of serum albumin [1; 2].

### **Storage Functions**

#### **Vitamin Storage**

The liver is capable of storing up to a four-month supply of vitamins B<sub>12</sub> and D and up to a 10-year supply of vitamin A for release as needed. Because of this storage capacity, excessive ingestion of vitamin A can have toxic effects on liver function [3; 4].

#### **Iron Storage**

Except for the iron stored in hemoglobin, most of the body's iron is stored in the liver as ferritin. Stored iron is released when blood levels of iron fall, a process known as iron buffering [3; 4].

#### **Synthesis of Coagulation Factors**

Prothrombin and factors VIII, IX, and X, necessary for effective blood coagulation, are synthesized in the liver. Vitamin K is necessary to promote synthesis for these clotting factors, but if bile secretion is inadequate, absorption of this fat-soluble vitamin cannot occur. The liver also synthesizes fibrinogen, another clotting factor [3; 4].

#### **Detoxification**

Many chemicals are detoxified in the liver, including such medications as barbiturates, antidiuretic hormone (ADH), amphetamines, aldosterone, and estrogen. If these substances were not detoxified, they could be fatally toxic to body tissues or organs, or could have other adverse effects (e.g., feminization of men or masculinization of women) [4; 5].

## **STRUCTURE OF THE GALLBLADDER**

The gallbladder is a pear-shaped, hollow, saclike organ about 7–10 cm long that lies in a fossa on the inferior surface of the liver. The cystic duct, which drains the gallbladder, joins with the hepatic duct of the liver to form the common bile duct. Pancreatic secretions also enter this duct via the pancreatic duct. Bile in the common duct enters the duodenum through the sphincter of Oddi. When the sphincter is relaxed, bile can enter the duodenum; when the sphincter is contracted, bile manufactured by the liver is stored in the gallbladder [6].

## **FUNCTIONS OF THE GALLBLADDER**

The major regulatory processes of the biliary system involve the concentration and storage of bile and the regulation of bile secretion [4; 5].

### **Concentration and Storage of Bile**

The hepatic cells can produce from 600–1,000 mL of bile in 24 hours, more than 10 times the 50–75 mL storage capacity of the gallbladder. The mucosa of the gallbladder concentrates bile by absorbing water and electrolytes. This leaves a solution of bile salts, cholesterol, lecithin, and bilirubin that is 5 to 10 times as concentrated as bile secreted by the liver [4; 5].

### **Regulation of Bile Secretion**

When ingested fat enters the small intestine, a hormone called cholecystokinin is released from the intestinal mucosa. Cholecystokinin travels to the gallbladder via the bloodstream, initiating contraction of the smooth muscle in the wall of the gallbladder and relaxation of the sphincter of Oddi. Vagal stimulation also contributes to contraction of the gallbladder. While the hormone secretin, produced by the jejunal and duodenal mucosa, weakly stimulates bile secretion by the liver, peristalsis stimulated by food further relaxes the sphincter of Oddi. These factors combine to produce the sending of bile into the duodenum with each gallbladder contraction and peristaltic wave. The gallbladder empties poorly in the absence of ingested fat but empties completely within an hour if fat is present. Approximately 94% of the bile salts released into the duodenum are reabsorbed and returned to the liver via the bloodstream [5; 6].

---

## **PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC INFLUENCES AND EFFECTS**

---

### **ENLARGEMENT OF THE LIVER**

Under normal circumstances, the liver is capable of regeneration following alleviation of an acute condition (e.g., drug toxicity, abscess, inflammation). If the pathogenic influence persists, however, regeneration will be of fibrotic origin [7].

When dead or diseased cells are replaced by fibrous tissue, the liver becomes enlarged (hepatomegaly). Fibrotic scar tissue may impede emptying of blood from the hepatic veins, causing the liver lobules to become engorged. This engorgement leads to further enlargement. Pressure exerted on abdominal nerves by the enlarged liver or displacement of other abdominal organs may cause discomfort or pain. Hepatomegaly may also be related to invasion and multiplication of neoplastic cells [7].

### ATROPHY OF THE LIVER

Although the liver may be enlarged during the early stages of hepatic pathology, it eventually atrophies if the pathogenic influence is not removed. In patients with alcohol use disorder, for example, continued ingestion of alcohol combined with malnutrition causes scar tissue to replace the dead cells. In time, the scar tissue shrinks, and the liver becomes smaller than normal. Adjacent organs tend to encroach on the space formerly occupied by the liver. For this reason, a liver from a donor smaller than the recipient is best for transplant purposes [7; 8].

### PORTAL HYPERTENSION

As hepatic tissue becomes increasingly fibrotic, the portal veins become compressed. This compression increases back-pressure as portal venous blood volume rises. Portal hypertension results, with pressures in the portal vein as high as 20 mm Hg. This contributes to the development of ascites, the accumulation of protein-rich serum in the peritoneal cavity [7; 8].

Collateral pathways develop between the portal and systemic circulation in areas where tributaries of portal and systemic veins are in close approximation. As portal pressure increases, all collateral pathways between the portal and systemic circulation enlarge [8].

Collateral vessels in the lower esophagus dilate because they are not anatomically structured to carry the extra blood shunted via the azygous system. These dilated veins, called esophageal varices, may rupture, causing massive hemorrhage. Hemorrhoids (rectal varices) can result from the increased pressure in hemorrhoid veins. Splenomegaly can develop secondary to engorgement of the splenic veins [8].

When esophageal varices hemorrhage, treatment is complicated by abnormalities in blood coagulation related to impaired hepatic function. As bile production becomes impaired, absorption of vitamin K is also impaired. Insufficiency or lack of vitamin K leads to decreased production of prothrombin and coagulation factors VIII, IX, and X. Insufficient clotting factors, in turn, is related to increased clotting times. This pathogenic sequence may be signaled by ecchymosis all over the body, bleeding of the gums, or blood in the stool [8].

### IMPAIRMENT OF GAS EXCHANGE

Although the vascular dehydration seen in hepatic failure may mask erythrocytopenia, red blood cell deficiency does occur in relation to several factors. For example, the impaired liver cannot store sufficient B<sub>12</sub> and iron for erythrocyte synthesis. In alcohol-related pathologic states, ingestion of large quantities of alcohol inhibits renal synthesis of erythropoietin; the blood contains a higher proportion of immature erythrocytes and fewer mature red cells. This deficit may manifest as dyspnea, increased cardiac output, cardiomegaly, and clubbing of the fingers [7; 8].

### INCREASED SUSCEPTIBILITY TO INFECTION

Injury to the liver is accompanied by damage to or destruction of the Kupffer cells. Phagocytosis is impaired. Micro-organisms enter the general circulation and may form abscesses in the liver tissue itself. Whereas the normal liver accounts of 25% of the body's production of lymphocytes, the diseased liver is incapable of lymphocyte production. Lymphocytopenia increases the body's susceptibility to infection [7; 8].

### IMPAIRMENT OF BILIRUBIN EXCRETION

In a compromised liver, absorption and conjugation of bilirubin are impaired. Increased levels of unconjugated bilirubin in the blood and body fluids leads to jaundice, or icterus. The skin becomes yellowish and pruritic, renal excretion of unconjugated bilirubin causes the urine to become mahogany colored, and the stools are clay colored (acholic) due to the absence of stercobilin [7; 8].

Not all cases of jaundice are related to impairment of bilirubin conjugation. For example, if the common bile duct is obstructed by gallstone (choledocholithiasis) or a neoplasm, bilirubin that has been conjugated by the liver cannot be excreted into the duodenum. Levels of bilirubin rise, and the symptoms of jaundice occur. Jaundice may also be related to cholecystitis (inflammation of the gallbladders) or to spasms of the sphincter of Oddi, often associated with cholelithiasis [8].

Inability of the liver to remove the overproduction of bilirubin related to hemolytic states is another cause of jaundice. For example, reaction to a blood transfusion can induce a hemolytic state. The production of unconjugated bilirubin exceeds the conjugation capacity of the liver and levels of circulating unconjugated bilirubin rise. In newborn infants, a deficiency of glucuronyl transferase, the enzyme necessary for bilirubin conjugation, may lead to development of jaundice. This type of jaundice may usually be corrected by exposing the infant to ultraviolet light therapy [8].

Some hereditary disorders are also associated with jaundice, including Gilbert syndrome and Dubin-Johnson syndrome. Gilbert syndrome is associated with deficiency of glucuronyl transferase, while Dubin-Johnson syndrome is associated with impaired hepatic excretion of bilirubin [8].

### BILIARY INFECTIONS

In the presence of inflammation or obstruction, the gallbladder may become swollen by accumulated mucus secretions or purulent drainage. Staphylococcal, streptococcal, or enteric organisms may infect the gallbladder, or it may become gangrenous [9].

### AMMONIA TOXICITY

As the functional capacity of the liver diminishes, the ability to convert ammonia to urea for excretion by the kidney is impaired. Moreover, the collateral circulation caused by portal hypertension allows ammonia formed in the intestines to bypass the liver and enter the general circulation. The combined effect of these phenomena is ammonia toxicity.

This toxicity manifests itself in hepatic encephalopathy, an altered mental state that begins with confusion and progresses to combative states and ultimately to hepatic coma. Another characteristic symptom of ammonia toxicity is asterixis, a flapping tremor of the hands [9].

#### **ALTERNATION IN NUTRITION-RELATED FUNCTIONS**

Injury to hepatic cells compromises bile production and interferes with other nutrition-related hepatic functions, such as synthesis of glycogen. The decrease in appetite that often occurs in liver disease is followed by weight loss, subnormal body temperature, fatigue, and the metabolism of body fat and muscle to meet caloric requirements. Impairment of bile secretion leads to fat intolerance and decreased fat absorption. The use of muscle mass as an energy source combined with decreased capacity for urea formation leads to a negative nitrogen balance. The limbs become emaciated while the abdomen swells with ascites. Skin breakdown is common. Inability to metabolize the amino acid methionine adequately produces fetor hepaticus, a sweet breath odor resembling acetone or old wine [9; 10].

Deficiencies of folic acid and the B complex vitamins often occur in patients with alcoholic liver disease. Alcohol increases the demand for B vitamins, impairs absorption of folate and the B vitamins, and generally contributes to an inadequate consumption of all nutrients. Folic acid deficiency is manifested by a macrocytic anemia, glossitis, and diarrhea. Lesions of the oral mucosa and tongue, fissures at the corners of the mouth (cheilosis), and peripheral neuropathies result from lack of B complex vitamins. Patients with bleeding tendencies require additional vitamin K [9; 10].

Diminished fat absorption leads to deficiencies of the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K. Night blindness is associated with deficiency of vitamin A. Osteoporosis may occur in relation to vitamin D deficiency, putting the patient at risk for fractures. Vitamin E deficiency can cause impaired red blood cell survival in adults [9; 10].

#### **ALTERATIONS IN FLUID VOLUME**

Among the substances synthesized by the normal liver is the plasma protein albumin, which is necessary for maintaining the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma. If plasma albumin is insufficient or absent the normal colloidal osmotic pressure of the blood is not maintained. Plasma seeps into the interstitial spaces, causing peripheral and dependent edema. Pulmonary edema may lead to right-sided congestive heart failure. Ascites may be related to hypoalbuminemia and failure of the liver to detoxify aldosterone, as well as to portal hypertension. Accumulations exceeding 2 L may lead to difficulty breathing from pressure on the diaphragm, decrease in appetite, increased feeling of fullness, constipation, flatulence, and umbilical hernia. The weight and bulk of the fluid may also restrict activity [9; 10].

#### **IMPAIRMENT OF DETOXIFICATION**

The diminished detoxification capacity of the compromised liver may compound problems related to hypoalbuminemia. Increased levels of circulating aldosterone and ADH increase retention of sodium and water, respectively, further complicating the patient's edema. Intravascular dehydration (lack of plasma in the blood vessels) related to hypoalbuminuria, may mask erythrocytopenia, because the dilution state of the blood has been altered [10; 11].

Alteration in detoxification may also induce other problems related to excessive levels of hormones, chemicals, or drugs. Changes associated with an excess of estrogen may occur, including loss of axillary, pubic, and body hair; soft skin; and gynecomastia and testicular atrophy in men. Decreased libido, impotence, spider angiomas, and palmar erythema are also associated with increased estrogen levels. Alcohol, antibiotics, psychotropic drugs, and some antihypertensive medications may also accumulate in toxic levels when liver function is impaired [10; 11].

---

#### **RELATED SYSTEMS INFLUENCES AND EFFECTS**

Because the hepatobiliary system performs multiple functions related to several other body systems, impairment of hepatobiliary function can affect these systems to varying degrees.

##### **INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM**

Yellowing of the skin is characteristic of jaundice. Pruritus (itching) associated with jaundice may become so severe that patients scratch until they bleed. The break in skin integrity increases the patient's susceptibility to infection [11].

Xanthomas and xanthelasmas may occur in patients with biliary problems in whom serum cholesterol levels are high. These foamy, cholesterol-filled cells may appear anywhere on the body but are commonly seen on the hands and around the eyes [11].

Edema and poor nutritional status also may make the skin susceptible to breakdown. Pressure injuries may form within hours in patients who are not frequently repositioned. White nails, in which 80% of the proximal nail bed is white leaving a distal band of normal pink, are often associated with cirrhosis. In hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson disease), the lunulae (half-moons in nail beds) are colored light blue instead of the normal white [11].

##### **CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM**

Fluid overload or congestive heart failure may occur in response to excessive levels of aldosterone and ADH. Reduced oxygen-carrying capacity from erythrocytopenia may lead to increased cardiac output, as the heart labors to deliver oxygen to starved tissues. Increased portal vein pressure related to hepatic fibrosis increases pressure within adjacent vessels and thereby leads to esophageal varices, splenomegaly, and periumbilical dilata-

tion. Hemorrhage of esophageal varices may further reduce the erythrocyte count. Increased clotting time because of efficiency in coagulation factors may produce hemorrhage and hypovolemic shock [11].

### NEUROLOGIC SYSTEM

Ammonia toxicity is related to alteration in mental states ranging from confusion to hepatic coma. A patient who is confused or combative has a high potential for injury [11].

---

### PSYCHOSOCIAL/LIFESTYLE INFLUENCES AND EFFECTS

---

Like all body systems, the hepatobiliary system both influences and is influenced by psychosocial factors.

### SEX AND AGE

Cholelithiasis (gallstones) occurs in women four to five times as often as it does in men. This increased incidence is thought to be related to the action of estrogen and progesterone, which increase the cholesterol saturation of bile. The higher the cholesterol saturation, the greater the risk that gallstones will form. Pregnant women and those taking oral contraceptives are at even higher risk of developing cholelithiasis, especially those who have had several pregnancies or who have been on oral contraceptives for several years [12].

Cholelithiasis is more common in individuals older than 40 years of age; however, it can occur at any age, especially in association with risk factors such as high fat intake, obesity, diabetes, multiple pregnancies, or oral contraceptive use [12].

Young adults and older individuals are at greater risk of contracting viral hepatitis. This increased risk may be associated with poor nutrition or with crowded or unsanitary living conditions [13].

Older adult persons are susceptible to problems of drug toxicity, in part because renal and hepatic function declines with age. At 70 years of age, renal and hepatic efficiency may be half what it was at 20 years of age, yet the prescription of medications for elderly patients often do not reflect this fact. If dosage adjustments are not made, a drug may be prescribed at twice the dosage actually needed. If the patient misunderstands dosage instructions or increases the dosage in the supposition that “more is better,” toxic reactions can occur. Older adults often have multiple health problems, and several different healthcare providers may inadvertently prescribe medications that interact unfavorably. Self-medication with over-the-counter remedies (especially laxatives) may compound the overdosage [14].

### ALCOHOL AND DRUG ABUSE

Abuse of alcohol is a factor in many, though by no means all, conditions that damage the liver. In addition, drug abuse, especially of injected substances, is associated with an increased risk of contracting hepatitis [15].

### LACK OF SANITATION

Drinking water or water used in preparation of foods (e.g., washing fresh fruit or salad greens) may become contaminated by secretions or fecal material from persons with viral hepatitis (A or B). Shellfish caught in waters contaminated by untreated or inadequately treated sewage may also transmit hepatitis A virus. As such, sanitation is an important factor in the control of hepatitis. Nurses, especially those working in community settings, can help inform their patients of the importance of washing hands before handling food and after using toilet facilities [15; 16].

### DIETARY HABITS

High-fat diets can contribute to the development of cirrhosis of the liver as well as to gallbladder disease, and biliary diseases are more common in cultures in which food is prepared mostly by frying or large amounts of fat are used in cooking. Conversely, the incidence of gallbladder disease is low in African and South American countries in which fat consumption is low. Due in part to the popularity of fast-food chains and fried snack products, the typical American diet is high in fat. A high intake of alcohol and associated malnutrition also contribute to the development of hepatic and biliary disease [17].

### ECONOMIC FACTORS

Although malnutrition is usually associated with poverty, a high income does not ensure a balanced diet. Reliance on fast foods and snack foods and consumption of a fat-laden diet occur in all socioeconomic classes. Poor sanitation and high alcohol consumption may also occur at any income level [17].

### OCCUPATION AND AVOCATION

Exposure to all types of hepatitis is a special risk for healthcare professionals, who may be exposed to virus-contaminated blood or secretions. Laboratory and operating room personnel and those who work in hemodialysis units are at particular risk of contact through exposure to body fluids. Nurses administering intravenous therapy or disposing of secretions may be exposed to hepatitis if strict asepsis and isolation principles are not followed. In addition, dentists may be exposed to the hepatitis virus in the saliva of a hepatitis carrier or a person with active disease [18].

Exposure to toxic chemicals may be related to occupation, leisure-time hobbies, or a pharmaceutical regimen. Halothane and chloroform, to which operating room personnel are exposed, are hepatotoxic. Carbon tetrachloride, used in dry cleaning and in various industrial processes, is hepatotoxic, as are toluene and other chemicals used in paint thinners and other compounds used by both professionals and hobbyists. Gold, used in the jewelry trade and in the fabrication of some electronic components, is also hepatotoxic. Among the medications that may have a toxic effect on the liver are a number of antibiotics (including erythromycin, oxacillin, and clindamycin), some psychotropic medications, and oral contraceptives. Highly stressful occupations or those that require a great deal of socialization may contribute to alcohol use disorder.



In taking the health history, nurses should be alert to these psychosocial factors that can help identify patients who appear to be at risk and refer them for detection of early pathological conditions affecting the hepatobiliary system [18].

---

**NURSING ASSESSMENT:  
ESTABLISHING THE DATA BASE**

---

**SUBJECTIVE DATA**

In assessing a patient's health status, the health history furnishes valuable clues to past and present problems, as well as to risk factors that can help predict the risk for future problems. Usually, the patient is the chief source of information, but family members also may be able to contribute useful data [19; 20; 21].

The patient should be questioned about any recent loss of weight, change in appetite, or changes in bowel patterns. What color are the patient's stools? What color is the urine? Clay-colored stools or mahogany-colored urine suggests obstruction of the common, hepatic, or cystic ducts or an abnormality of bilirubin excretion. Is a change in color of stool or urine accompanied by yellowing of the sclera or the skin? Did pruritus occur when these changes were noticed? Associating these symptoms may help the patient recall when they began [19; 20; 21].

Has the patient lost weight or lost interest in food? A positive reply might suggest the development of hepatitis or hepatic cancer, depending on other symptoms and signs elicited during the assessment. What does the patient usually eat? High fat intake might suggest cholelithiasis. Does the patient bruise easily or bleed for a long time after a minor cut? Decreased absorption of vitamin K may be associated with hyperbilirubinemia, which can affect blood coagulation and the clotting cascade [20; 21; 22].

Edema of the ankles, difficulty breathing, and collection of fluid in the abdomen could indicate right-sided heart failure, hypoalbuminemia, portal hypertension, or inadequate detoxification of ADH and aldosterone. The patient may not remember when such changes began, but asking when clothing became tight around the waist or shoes no longer fit can help to pinpoint onset [20].

Has the patient had frequent infections? Increased incidence of infection may be related to destruction of Kupffer cells. Has the patient been exposed to hepatitis or mononucleosis? Has the patient had any recent blood transfusion? A positive answer may be correlated with the evidence suggesting hepatitis. Impotence or loss of libido may be related to impaired estrogen detoxification. Determining whether alcohol use might be related to liver dysfunction also requires discretion and tact. One should not presuppose that the patient has alcohol use disorder, even if the suspected disorder is commonly

associated with consumption of alcohol. The patient who does have an alcohol problem may be reluctant to answer, may evade questions, or may deny any drinking problems. In some cases, family members will verify unexplained changes in behavior that may suggest alcohol use disorder [20].

Specific, nonjudgmental questions are most likely to yield useful data about drinking habits. Possible questions include:

- What do you like to drink?
- How often do you drink? Every day? Several times each day? Week? Month? Such specifics are more useful than generalities such as "rarely" or "often."
- How much do you drink? One drink? Three or four?
- Does wine with dinner mean a glass or a carafe? By "a few beers" do you mean couple of cans? A six pack?
- When you drink, how much do you consume in 24 hours?
- What is the most you've drunk in 24 hours?
- Do you drink in the morning? At or after work? With friends? Alone?
- Have you ever blacked out?
- Does drinking make you sick or does it make you feel better?

Remember that alcohol in any form (wine, beer, or hard liquor) has the same effect. A 12-oz. bottle of beer, a 4-oz. glass of wine, and a 1-oz. shot of Scotch contain the same amount of alcohol. It is also important not to concentrate on alcohol while ignoring other clues. What is the patient's occupation? Does it involve exposure to solvents, dry-cleaning solutions, anesthetic agents, or other hepatotoxic substances? Does the patient have hobbies that might have hepatotoxic side effects (e.g., furniture refinishing) [20]?

**OBJECTIVE DATA****Physical Assessment**

Physical assessment of the patient with hepatobiliary dysfunction involves careful inspection of the skin, nails, and hair. Physical findings that suggest cirrhosis include:

- Ascites
- Ankle edema
- Muscle wasting
- Dilated periumbilical veins (caput medusa)
- Ecchymosis
- Spider angiomas
- Loss of body hair
- Gynecomastia (breast enlargement in males)
- Jaundice (yellow coloration to skin and sclera)
- Clubbing of the fingers

If the patient is in a late stage of liver dysfunction, asterixis related to ammonia toxicity and impending coma will be observed; in these patients, the hands rapidly clench and unclench. Inflating a blood pressure cuff on the arm will worsen the tremor. Asterixis may also be seen in patients with cancer of the liver. In patients with hepatitis, however, only ecchymosis and jaundice will be apparent, unless the condition is long standing. Bruising and jaundice may sometimes accompany hepatic abscess; however, diminished appetite is often the only sign of this disorder. As mentioned previously, jaundice may also be secondary to an obstructive condition or an abnormality affecting bilirubin conjugation [20].

The abdomen should be auscultated before it is palpated. Diminished bowel sounds are common in patients with ascites. At the same time, auscultation of the lungs may elicit evidence of rales or rhonchi related to pulmonary edema. Listen for hepatic bruits, which may be heard with hepatic carcinoma [20].

Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly can be present in patients with hepatitis, cholecystitis, hepatic abscess, mononucleosis, cirrhosis, or liver cancer. Because of the danger of damaging or rupturing these organs, the one should generally avoid palpating the liver or spleen unless they are experienced in this type of examination. If enlargement is severe, these organs may be felt by very light palpation of the abdomen. Swollen lymph nodes may be palpable in the neck or in the groin with an infectious disorder such as mononucleosis [20].

If possible, percussion for measurement of liver size and the usual area of splenic dullness helps determine whether either organ is enlarged. The normal liver span at the midclavicular line (MCL) is 6–12 cm. When percussing liver size, begin low in the abdomen, below the umbilicus, and percuss up the right MCL. The percussion note heard initially is tympany, reflecting air in the bowel. The lower border of the liver is identified when the percussion note changes to dullness. To identify the upper liver border, begin above the nipple, percussing downward along the right MCL. When the percussion note changes from resonance to dullness, the upper liver border has been located. Measure the distance between these two points to determine liver size. Abnormal findings include feeling the liver more than 1 cm below the costal margin [20].

The normal adult spleen lies behind the ninth and eleventh ribs, at or slightly posterior to the left midaxillary line (MAL). The spleen can be located by percussing downward in the intercostal space (ICS) at the left MAL, beginning in the eighth left ICS. The percussion note should change from resonance to splenic dullness at about the tenth left ICS. A large area of dullness may indicate feces in the splenic flexure of the colon, a full stomach, or splenomegaly. Note that patients who have had organ transplants may have undergone splenectomy [20].

Three assessment techniques can be used to determine whether fluid is present in the abdomen:

- With the patient supine, both flanks may be percussed for dullness, which indicates the presence of fluid.
- When the patient assumes a side-lying position, fluid will fall toward the sides on which the patient is lying, where it may be percussed for dullness.
- The presence of a fluid wave may be determined by having the patient lie flat and place his or her hand, ulnar side down, along the abdominal midline and apply pressure to anchor the fat in the mesentery. (If the patient is too ill to participate, an assistant can do this.) Place one hand on one flank to detect signs of a fluid wave while tapping the opposite flank with the other hand. There will be a short time lag between the tap and receipt of the impulse.

Abdominal girth should be measured daily. Measurements taken at the same location (at the level of the umbilicus) assist in evaluating progression and/or treatment of ascites [20].

### DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

#### Hematologic Studies

Blood samples for determination of white blood cell count (WBC), prothrombin time (PT), hemoglobin level (Hb), and hematocrit (Hct) may be drawn at any time. Hemoglobin and hematocrit values are unaffected by early stages of hepatic disease but may drop if there is hemorrhage from esophageal varices and in response to malnourishment. Prothrombin time will increase with vitamin K deficiency, as may occur with cirrhosis, hepatitis, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, mononucleosis, or liver cancer. Leukocyte levels increase in patients with mononucleosis, hepatitis, and abscesses [23; 24; 25].

#### Serum Enzyme Studies

Elevated serum enzyme levels occur when hepatic cells are damaged and enzymes are released into the blood. Specific values that are likely to be elevated with liver or gallbladder disease include:

- Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)
- Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)
- Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)
- Alkaline phosphatase
- Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT)

LDH, AST, and ALT values are significantly increased in obstructive jaundice and mononucleosis; they are also markedly elevated in acute and toxic hepatitis, cirrhosis, and hepatic neoplasia. Alkaline phosphatase levels, important in measuring biliary obstruction, are extremely elevated in obstructive jaundice, significantly elevated in liver cancer and mononucleosis, and slightly elevated in hepatitis (viral or toxic) and cirrhosis. Elevation of GGT is the most accurate enzymatic indicator of hepatic disease. Enzyme levels will rise as the disease progresses, peaking at the time of maximum cell death, and then begin to fall [23; 24].

### Serum Lipid Values

Changes in serum lipid values are related to the type of disorder. Serum lipids are elevated in obstructive disorders of the biliary system, such as cholelithiasis or neoplasia. They are decreased in disorders causing the destruction of hepatic cells (e.g., cirrhosis, hepatitis) [23; 24].

### Bilirubin Values

Studies of bilirubin values are important in determining the cause of jaundice and hyperbilirubinemia. Direct or conjugated bilirubin levels will be elevated if biliary ducts are obstructed and conjugated bilirubin cannot be excreted. Indirect or unconjugated bilirubin levels will be high if parenchymal (liver lobule) cells have been damaged [23; 24].

Elevated levels of urobilinogen in the urine indicate parenchymal liver disease, such as cirrhosis, toxic or infectious hepatitis, or infectious mononucleosis, or they may indicate cholelithiasis. By impairing the excretion of bilirubin in the stool, these conditions lead to increased excretion by the kidneys. Urine that contains bilirubin develops a yellow foam when shaken. Fecal levels of urobilinogen are decreased if the bile ducts are obstructed, but this test is rarely performed because of the difficulty in obtaining accurate values. A 24-hour urine collection would be done to determine the presence and level of urobilinogen [23; 24].

### Blood Ammonia Values

Blood ammonia values rise when cirrhosis is present, because the disease impairs the conversion of ammonia to urea for renal excretion. Bleeding esophageal varices exacerbate ammonia toxicity, because the ammonia produced by the action of intestinal bacteria on the protein in blood adds rapidly to already elevated serum ammonia levels. Hepatic coma can result [23; 24].

### Other Laboratory Test Values

Changes in serum protein levels are common in hepatic and biliary disorders. Serum albumin levels drop (hypoalbuminemia) and gamma globulin levels rise when parenchymal cell damage occurs. Serum antigen-antibody levels help identify and type hepatitis. For example, hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) is present in the blood of persons who have hepatitis B and also in those who are carriers of the disease. Patients with hepatitis B surface antibodies (anti-HBs) in their blood have immunity to hepatitis B [23; 24].

### Ultrasound

For some patients, especially those for whom oral cholecystography or cholangiography are contraindicated, ultrasound offers a noninvasive alternative. This technique is being used with increasing frequency to investigate ambiguous findings obtained by other techniques. It is useful in differentiating benign cysts and tumors from malignancies. Liver abscesses and dilation of intrahepatic ducts can be identified by ultrasound, as can gallstones, biliary tumors, and tumors of the extrahepatic ducts. In a patient with jaundice, dilation of

the extrahepatic ducts suggests extrahepatic obstruction. If the ducts appear normal, jaundice is likely to be related to extrahepatic or prehepatic conditions. Hepatic icterus is related to abnormalities of bilirubin conjugation or excretion. Extrahepatic icterus is related to obstruction of the hepatic, common, or cystic bile ducts. Prehepatic icterus is associated with an abnormality that takes effect before circulating bilirubin reaches the liver (e.g., hemolysis of neonatal icterus) [23].

### Nursing Implications

To ensure that the gallbladder is a maximum size for the test, the patient must be kept NPO after midnight on the day of testing. Were the patient to eat, contraction and emptying of the gallbladder would reduce its size, making it more difficult to visualize. NPO orders are not necessary for visualization of the liver. If barium contrast studies have been performed prior to the ultrasonography, a laxative will be ordered to cleanse the bowel of residual contrast medium [23].

In explaining the procedure to the patient, the nurse can offer reassurance that the study is not painful. The patient should be prepared for the copious amount of lubricant that will be applied to the skin to enhance the transmission of the sound waves. The rationale for any NPO order should be explained. The procedure will take about 20 minutes [26; 27].

### Liver Scan

For the liver scan, a radionuclide is administered intravenously. Thirty minutes later, a detecting device is passed over the patient's abdomen to record the distribution of radioactive particles in the liver. Although this technique exposes the patient to far less radiation than x-rays, it can only demonstrate filling defects greater than 2 cm in diameter. It is contraindicated for pregnant patients and those who might have difficulty lying still during the scan, which takes about one hour [23; 28; 29].

No special preparation is required for this study. The procedure should be fully explained to the patient, including that small amounts of radioactive substances are used. Some patients may be apprehensive about the amount of time required for the scan, and it is helpful to explain that the scanning device does not emit radiation but rather records radiation emanating from the injected radioisotope. Pregnant healthcare providers should not be assigned to the patient for at least 24 hours after the radionuclide injection [26; 27; 28].

### Dye Clearance Studies

For dye clearance studies, the patient fasts for 12 hours prior to the test. Dye is injected intravenously (about 5 mg/kg of body weight). Blood is drawn 45 minutes after the injection and inspected for the presence of dye. Normally, less than 5% of the dye will be found in the serum; the presence of a greater proportion of the dye indicates liver cell damage, as the impaired cells cannot absorb the dye from the blood. If hepatic damage is known to exist, lower dosages of dye are administered. The indocyanine green (ICG) clearance test is the most widely used quantitative liver function test [23; 28; 30].

### Oral Cholecystography

An oral cholecystography, or gallbladder series, provides visualization of the gallbladder following oral ingestion of a radiopaque iodinated dye. In the first test of the series, gallstones (when present) may be visualized as dark shadows in a dye-filled gallbladder. Satisfactory visualization of the gallbladder can be obtained only if the gallbladder has concentrated the dye. Adequate concentrating depends on correct dosage of the dye, adequate absorption of the dye from the gastrointestinal tract (no nausea or vomiting), and absence of food in the digestive tract (NPO after midnight). If nonvisualization occurs, the test is repeated the next day with a doubled dosage of dye. Hepatocellular dysfunction, cystic duct obstruction, or inflammation of the biliary mucosa will prevent visualization. The patient's allergy history should be determined prior to testing [23; 28].

In the second phase of the series, the patient is given a fatty meal immediately following the first phase, and x-rays are taken to determine how well the gallbladder empties. The x-rays are repeated every 30 minutes until the dye is gone and the gallbladder can no longer be visualized. This may take one to five hours, but usually takes no more than three [23].

This is an older study that is rarely used today, as ultrasound or computed tomography (CT) are more accurate, faster techniques for identifying gallstones without exposure to iodine. Ultrasonography is typically the preferred modality, because it is less invasive, more accurate cholelithiasis, and can be safely used with most patients. In general, use of oral cholecystography is limited to cases in which gallstones are strongly suspected but ultrasonography does not show them. If it is indicated, oral cholecystography is contraindicated for pregnant women, patients too ill to swallow the tablets or to eat a meal, and persons allergic to iodine [23].

Patients undergoing oral cholecystography are required to swallow seven or eight tablets of absorbable iodine dye the evening prior to the test. After the tablets are swallowed, only water may be given until midnight; after midnight, patients are kept NPO. Nursing implications include [26; 27]:

- Verifying that no iodine allergy exists. The patient should be questioned about seafood allergies, as not all patients are aware that these foods contain iodine.
- Ascertaining that the patient is given a low-fat meal on the evening before the test.
- Verifying that serum bilirubin is less than 1.8 mg/dL (so visualization will be possible).
- Explaining the procedure to the patient.
- Administering the tablets at five-minute intervals.
- Observing for adverse effects of the dye (because anaphylactic reactions have occurred).
- Maintaining NPO status.

### Oral and Intravenous Cholangiography

Oral and intravenous cholangiography allowed for visualization of the hepatic and common bile ducts in addition to the gallbladder and cystic duct. It was historically used for patients with acute inflammatory disorders, those with proven gallstones, and those who are NPO or unable to tolerate the orally ingested dye used in cholecystography [23; 26; 27; 28]. However, these studies have become obsolete, having been replaced by more advanced technologies, such as the endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTHC) and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) [31].

### Intraoperative Cholangiography

Cholangiography may be performed during a surgical procedure to ascertain that all calculi have been removed from the common bile duct, reducing the probability of complications or follow-up surgery. Dye is injected to enhance visualization [23; 28].

### T-Tube Cholangiography

A T-Tube cholangiography may be taken 7 to 10 days following a cholangiography. The T-tube is placed during surgery. Later, dye is injected via the T-tube so the common bile duct may be visualized and its patency ascertained [23; 28]. As with other older modalities, this technique has been largely superseded by MRCP and ERCP.

### Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)

As noted, ERCP, PTHC, and ultrasound have become the most valuable studies for assessment of the biliary tract [31]. ERCP studies allow visualization of the bile ducts as well as benign masses, cysts, and malignant neoplasms [23; 32; 33].

With ERCP, a type of fibrotic endoscope termed a duodenoscope is inserted into the duodenum via the esophagus. Intravenously administered secretin immobilizes the duodenum, facilitating visualization of the ampulla of Vater. Contrast material combined with a broad-spectrum antibiotic are administered through a small cannula inserted into the ampulla, and films are taken periodically for approximately an hour. The antibiotic is given to prevent gram-negative sepsis that may occur if bacteria are forced in the bloodstream by the pressure of the dye injections. Perforation of the esophagus, stomach, or duodenum is another possible complication of ERCP, so this technique is not used for combative patients [23; 32; 33].

A consent form is necessary for this procedure. On teaching the patient about the procedure, explain that an impulse to gag will be felt when the tube is passed. The patient is kept NPO after midnight. Meperidine and atropine are administered intramuscularly before the patient is taken to the radiology department. Emotional support should be given as needed. After the procedure, the patient's pulse, temperature, and blood pressure are monitored for signs of shock that may

arise from perforation or hemorrhage and for signs of sepsis. Pancreatitis may occur in response to the pressure exertion on the pancreatic duct during the procedure; therefore, a serum amylase test should be performed on the day following an ERCP [26; 27].

### **Percutaneous Transhepatic Cholangiography (PTHC)**

Like ERCP, PTHC is used for icteric patients with serum bilirubin levels greater than 3.5 mg/dL. During this procedure, a combination of contrast medium and antibiotic is injected into the intrahepatic bile duct to visualize the biliary system. The area below the right costal margin is locally anesthetized, and a spinal needle is inserted directly into the liver, guided by fluoroscopy. When bile appears through the needle, it is withdrawn by syringe. Radiopaque dye is then injected directly into the biliary tree. Fluoroscopy is used to determine filling of the biliary tract [23; 28; 34].

The patient is intravenously sedated during the procedure, which takes about one hour. If obstruction is found, a catheter may be left in place for drainage of bile. A PTHC is contraindicated for patients who have prolonged clotting times or iodine allergy, for patients who have had recent gastrointestinal contrast studies or are unlikely to tolerate surgery, and for combative patients. Bile peritonitis, hemorrhage, and sepsis are possible complications [23].

A consent form is required for this procedure, and coagulation studies as well as information regarding possible iodine allergy must be verified. The patient is kept NPO after midnight. A laxative may be prescribed if gastrointestinal studies using barium have been recently administered. An intravenous infusion is started for venous access, and the patient is premedicated with meperidine and atropine before leaving the unit. After the procedure, the patient is kept NPO. Vital signs should be monitored as for any postsurgical patient. A sterile closed system should be maintained if a catheter has been left in place [26; 27].

### **Liver Biopsy**

The purpose of a liver biopsy is to obtain a sample of tissue for histologic examination. Prior to the procedure, ultrasound may be done to determine the precise location of the liver. A coagulation profile should be obtained so the risk of hemorrhage can be calculated. The patient's blood is typed and crossmatched in case a transfusion is needed. Biopsy is contraindicated if the platelet count is below 100,000/mcL [23; 28; 35].

For percutaneous liver biopsy, the patient is assisted into a supine or left lateral position. The skin is aseptically cleansed and anesthetized, and a small incision is made to allow insertion of a specialized needle into the liver. In the case of transjugular biopsy, the right jugular vein is punctured under ultrasound guidance, and a guide wire is passed through, followed by placement of a 9-French sheath. The wire is then negotiated through the heart at to the right hepatic vein.

Placement is verified with hepatic venogram with contrast. A stiffening cannula is placed, then the biopsy needle is introduced. With both techniques, a small core of hepatic tissue is then withdrawn and sent for microscopic evaluation. Following the procedure, the patient should assume the right lateral position to keep pressure on the liver to prevent hemorrhage [23; 28; 35].

These procedures require a consent form. The patient is kept NPO after midnight. Nursing responsibilities include:

- Checking coagulation studies and consent form.
- Maintaining NPO status.
- Recording preprocedure vital signs.
- Providing emotional support for the patient; this procedure can be frightening and uncomfortable.
- Explaining the procedure to the patient, emphasizing the importance of holding still.
- Immediately prior to needle insertion asking the patient to inhale deeply, exhale completely, and hold the breath at the end of expiration. This immobilizes the chest wall and keeps the diaphragm at its upper level during the procedure (which takes 5 to 10 seconds).
- Applying pressure to the biopsy site after needle removal.
- Turning patient onto right side with a pillow under the costal margin to maintain pressure to the site.
- Observing for bile-colored drainage on the patient's dressing. This could indicate that a biliary vessel has been penetrated.
- Monitoring post-procedure vital signs (every 15 minutes for an hour, then every 30 minutes for two hours, then every four hours), and administering comfort measures after the procedure.

The patient should remain immobile on the right side on bedrest for 24 hours and be closely observed for signs of hemorrhage, extravasation of fluid from the biopsy site, peritonitis, and pain. Pain in the right upper quadrant and right shoulder area is common. The patient should be reassured about this while being encouraged to report any change in pain level. Analgesics, if given, must be non-hepatotoxic and must not affect clotting [26; 27].

---

## **NURSING DIAGNOSES**

---

Assessment of the patient with hepatic or biliary dysfunction, including evaluation of the patient's health history and results of laboratory tests and diagnostic studies, can lead to many possible nursing diagnoses.

## ALTERATIONS IN COMFORT

### Pain

Mild or moderate pain may occur in relation to hepatomegaly or splenomegaly associated with hepatitis, hepatic abscess, or infectious mononucleosis. Moderate pain may accompany late cirrhosis and chronic hepatitis. With cancer of the liver, whether the liver is a primary or a metastatic site, pain becomes severe and intractable. Severe, colicky pain in the right upper quadrant is common with cholelithiasis or cholecystitis [36; 37].

### Pruritus

Regardless of whether icterus is prehepatic or hepatic, pruritus will be associated with the jaundice. The patient may scratch the skin until it bleeds. The condition may be intensified by damp clothing or bedding caused by perspiration or by poor ventilation [36; 37].

### Potential for Impairment of Skin Integrity

If pruritus is severe and the patient scratches frequently, skin integrity may be broken. In cirrhosis and cancer of the liver, edema and negative nitrogen balance cause the skin to be susceptible to breakdown. If the patient does not frequently move, pressure injuries can form within 12 to 24 hours [36; 37].

### Sexual Dysfunction and Disturbance in Self-Concept

Disturbance in self-concept may be related to body image alteration and role performance. Softening of the skin, loss of body hair, or gynecomastia may be related to impaired estrogen detoxification. In some, these feminizing changes disturb the patient's sense of masculinity. Ascites and icterus further affect self-image. Complications associated with severe disease such as cancer or cirrhosis (e.g., ascites, pleural effusion) may necessitate the patient changing occupation or retiring. Loss of occupational role can severely damage self-esteem.

Sexual dysfunction may also accompany impairment of estrogen detoxification. Loss of libido may occur in both sexes, and male patients may become impotent. The patient may be hesitant to discuss these matters with healthcare professionals [36; 37].

## ALTERATION IN THOUGHT PROCESSES

Ammonia toxicity is related to the inability of the compromised hepatic cells to convert ammonia to urea for excretion in the urine. Ammonia interferes with brain metabolism, leading to alterations of mentation ranging from slight confusion to coma. Initially, patients may be somewhat confused or disoriented—unable, for example, to remember their names or where they are. Asterixis may also be apparent. Patients may then progress through lethargy to combativeness and abusive-

ness before collapsing into coma. Gastrointestinal hemorrhage further increases serum ammonia levels owing to bacterial action on blood in the gut. Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, characterized by confusion, disorientation, and amnesia with confabulation, may develop in patients with alcohol use disorder. The syndrome is related to thiamine deficiency [36; 37].

## ALTERATION IN NUTRITION

Hepatic dysfunction is associated with impaired metabolism of proteins, fats, carbohydrates, and vitamins. Weight loss, fatigue, negative nitrogen balance, vitamin B deficiency, and deficiencies of fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K are common. The patient should be encouraged to consume a balanced diet high in carbohydrates, vitamins, and (unless ammonia toxicity is present) protein. Abdominal pressure from ascites may cause a constant feeling of fullness as well as flatulence and constipation. These conditions may also diminish appetite, further depleting nutritional status. Patients with cirrhosis experience muscle wasting and significant weight loss [36; 37].

In cholelithiasis or cholestasis, a low-fat, low-protein diet should be consumed because fat metabolism is reduced by disturbances in biliary function. Deficiency of vitamin K may also accompany these disorders [17; 21].

## IMPAIRMENT OF GAS EXCHANGE

Several conditions related to hepatic and biliary disease impair exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide. Retention of sodium and water is associated with plural effusion and ascites. Ascites exerts pressure on the diaphragm, interfering with inspiration. Inadequate oxygenation of body tissue related to erythrocytopenia also impairs gas exchange [36; 37].

## ALTERATION IN FLUID VOLUME

Alterations in fluid volume may be either deficits or overloads. For example, when the compromised liver can no longer detoxify ADH and aldosterone, retention of sodium and water contributes to circulatory congestion and hypertension. Conversely, fluid volume deficit can be related to hemorrhage of esophageal varices (leading to shock) or to overuse of diuretics. If plasma colloidal osmotic pressure is reduced because of hypoalbuminemia, fluid extravasation into the interstitial space will cause edema despite intravascular dehydration. In this instance, diuretics alone will be ineffective in reducing edema and will, moreover, worsen dehydration [36; 37].

## ALTERATION IN TISSUE PERFUSION

Increased cardiac output associated with hypertension is related to fluid volume alteration. Erythrocytopenia can lead to increased cardiac output as the heart attempts to compensate for tissue oxygen needs.

---

**NURSE PLANNING  
AND IMPLEMENTATION**

---

For the patient with hepatobiliary dysfunction, alterations in comfort are likely to be associated with pain or pruritus.

**PAIN RELIEF**

Mild-to-moderate pain associated with various disorders may be controlled with non-narcotic, non-aspirin analgesics. Patients with hepatic dysfunction are likely to have coagulation abnormalities related to poor absorption of vitamin K. As such, drugs causing hepatic damage should also be avoided; the drugs of choice are those excreted by the kidneys [26].

For pain associated with cholelithiasis, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) provide greater relief of biliary pain and are considered first-line management [38]. NSAIDs have been reported as superior to antispasmodics for pain control. For narcotic management, meperidine is usually the drug of choice; butorphanol or hydromorphone can also be utilized, especially if NSAIDs are contraindicated [39]. Morphine is rarely administered. Nitroglycerin or phenobarbital may promote comfort by relaxing smooth muscle. Nursing measures, such as giving a backrub, assisting the patient in changing position, providing distraction, and offering emotional support, may supplement analgesic medication [27].

**PRURITUS RELIEF**

Pruritus associated with icterus can be extremely upsetting to the patient. It is important to rule out any possibility that the condition is related to an allergy or irritation. Measures to alleviate itching include dry clothing and bedding, emollients, a well-balanced diet, and distraction. Alkaline soaps should be avoided, and baths should be taken only every two or three days, if possible. Whirlpool baths are preferred [27]. Biliary drainage can help to alleviate related pruritus. If indicated, the preferred pharmacotherapy is with ursodeoxycholic acid; cholestyramine, rifampicin, naltrexone, and sertraline are second-line options.

**MAINTAINING AND IMPROVING SKIN INTEGRITY**

Several nursing interventions are crucial to the maintenance of skin integrity. Relieving pruritus should be a high priority, and frequent turning and repositioning is necessary to relieve pressure of edematous areas and prevent formation of pressure injuries. A low-sodium diet, fluid restriction, and diuretic therapy may be prescribed to reduce diuresis and lessen peripheral and abdominal edema. It is important to remember that pressure injuries can form in as little as 12 to 24 hours if turning and repositioning are not done conscientiously every 1 or 2 hours [26; 27].

Preventing infection presents a challenge, because the patient's reticuloendothelial system is severely compromised. Careful handwashing is essential. Sterile technique should be maintained during dressing changes for surgical wounds and at

catheter sites. Nutritional measures may be used to promote healing and improvement of skin integrity [26].

**MAINTAINING AND IMPROVING  
THOUGHT PROCESSES**

Evaluating the patient's mental status, promoting safety, and monitoring for ammonia toxicity are nursing responsibilities. Mentation may be monitored by assessing the patient's orientation to person, place, and time. One convenient technique for detecting changes in ammonia toxicity levels is having the patient write his or her name daily and compare the signatures. Severity of asterixis may be evaluated by pumping up a blood pressure cuff on the patient's arm; the more rapidly the hand clenches and unclenches, the higher the serum level of ammonia. The patient's breath should be assessed for fetor hepaticus, which is similar to the odor of acetone or old wine [26; 27].

Nurses should also be alert to the possibility that a hepatotoxic drug or dosage has been inadvertently prescribed. Detoxification capacity declines in older individuals, even under normal conditions; this impairment will be worsened in the presence of hepatic disease [40; 41].

Safety measures (e.g., padded side rails) may be necessary to protect patients who are confused or combative as a result of hepatic encephalopathy. The patient should be reminded not to get out of bed unassisted. Activities of daily living should be supervised [27].

**REDUCING AMMONIA LEVELS**

Various therapeutic measures may be prescribed to decrease serum ammonia levels. Intravenous administration of glucose may provide protein-conserving carbohydrates. Rest can decrease release of ammonia associated with muscle contraction [27].

Pharmacologic measures may also be employed. Potassium may be given to improve cerebral metabolism of ammonia. Hypokalemia has been identified as being a contributing factor for the increased risk of hepatic encephalopathy. Studies have shown that supplementing and correcting hypokalemia in patients with cirrhosis can decrease ammonia levels [42; 43]. Antibiotics such as neomycin may be administered orally or by enema to reduce the number of ammonia-synthesizing bacteria in the gut. Because neomycin is poorly absorbed from the intestine, its bactericidal action in the intestine is prolonged; however, this antibiotic may cause ototoxicity of nephrotoxicity if administered for more than six days [41; 44]. Metronidazole and rifampin are alternative choices.

Lactulose may be given orally or by nasogastric tube. This acts by acidifying the colon, so ammonia couples with hydrogen ions and is excreted in the feces. Improvement may be seen within 24 hours, with serum ammonia levels being reduced by 25% to 50% in most patients. Diarrhea is common with lactulose therapy, so electrolyte levels should be monitored. In some cases, hemodialysis may be necessary to reduce serum ammonia levels [41; 44].

Nurses should routinely check stools for occult blood and monitor vital signs for changes that might indicate gastrointestinal hemorrhage. If esophageal varices are bleeding, treatments include beta blockers and medical procedures to stop bleeding [27].

### IMPROVING NUTRITIONAL INTAKE

Unless ammonia toxicity is present, the patient with hepatic dysfunction should receive a diet high in protein to promote hepatic healing and prevent loss of muscle mass. The diet should be low in salt and high in vitamins, carbohydrates, and calories. If ammonia toxicity is present, potassium-rich foods should be provided. Although limiting protein can help address hyperammonemia, patients with hepatic dysfunction are often malnourished, and limiting protein intake is not generally recommended. Plant protein or milk-based protein can be used in patients with elevated ammonia levels [45]. The patient with biliary dysfunction should reduce the quantity of fats consumed [17].

Promoting a well-balanced diet with a patient who often has no appetite is a challenge. Appetite may be improved by providing oral hygiene and fresh air, minimizing movement, and administering prescribed antiemetics. Consultation with a dietitian is recommended to identify the best approach to feeding, perhaps in small, frequent feedings supplemented by nourishing snacks. As stated, plant protein supplements may be used if not contraindicated. It is helpful if the mealtime environment is pleasant and free of unpleasant odors. Food preferences elicited in the patient history should be considered. Explaining the rationale for the diet may encourage the patient to eat more. If the patient is unable to eat enough to meet caloric needs, feeding via nasogastric tube or total parenteral nutrition may be prescribed [17].

### IMPROVING GAS EXCHANGE

Several measures may be prescribed to improve oxygenation. If dyspnea occurs at rest or upon exertion, oxygen therapy may be initiated. Oral iron supplements or a transfusion of packaged red cells may be given to improve hemoglobin and hematocrit levels. Intramuscular injections of vitamin K1 improve clotting. Diuretic therapy or administration of albumin may be prescribed to reduce pleural effusion, which hinders gas exchange, or to decrease ascites, which exerts pressure on the diaphragm [27].

Nurses may be called upon to assist with paracentesis to remove ascitic fluid from the abdomen. The patient is assisted to a sitting position. The abdomen is cleansed with an antiseptic solution and draped. Local anesthesia is administered, and a trocar is inserted and tubing attached. Fluid drains via gravity into a sterile container. Up to 2 L of fluid may be removed; removal of a larger quantity may lead to shock. The amount and color of ascitic fluid removed should be documented before sending a sample for laboratory evaluation. Paracentesis may be repeated periodically as fluid accumulates [27]. Ascites

may also be controlled by a LeVeen or Denver shunt procedure, which will be discussed later in this course.

### RESTORING NORMAL FLUID VOLUME

Edema related to hepatic dysfunction can be misleading, because vascular dehydration frequently accompanies it and diuretic therapy alone can worsen dehydration. Diuretics should not be overused and should be given in conjunction with albumin. Aldosterone antagonists are the diuretics of choice, as edema is related to inadequate detoxification of aldosterone. Intake-output records should be maintained and electrolyte values and skin turgor assessed. The patient should be weighed and girth measured daily to assess fluid volume status; weight loss should not exceed one-half pound (0.23 kg) per day. Greater losses may result in a shift of fluids into the abdominal cavity, promote electrolyte imbalance, and precipitate hepatic encephalopathy [27].

In the patient with ascites, accumulated fluid may stretch the skin so tightly that it tears. Patients should be urged to avoid restrictive clothing, take good care of the skin, and change positions frequently. A pillow may be placed under the costal margin for support if the patient is lying on his or her side. Compression stockings may be worn and the limbs elevated frequently to minimize peripheral edema. When seated, patients should be warned to support their legs, not to cross them or let them dangle. A fluid deficit may occur during episodes of variceal hemorrhage. Lost blood should be replaced, and vital signs closely monitored. Fluid restrictions of 1,000 mL in 24 hours may be required when peripheral edema and ascites are present [27].

### IMPROVING TISSUE PERFUSION

Tissue perfusion may be improved by correcting anemia; iron supplements, vitamins B12 and K, and blood transfusions may be administered. When hemoglobin and hematocrit values are restored to normal levels, the heart pumps blood throughout the body more efficiently. Ecchymosis and gingival hemorrhage may indicate vitamin K deficiency. If the patient has coagulation disorders, intramuscular injections should be avoided whenever possible and pressure should be applied after any injection is given. Decreasing fluid overload, if present, will improve cardiac output [27].

---

## NURSING EVALUATION

---

### COMFORT

Nursing interventions related to alleviation of pain are considered successful when the patient is resting comfortably without severe pain and can perform activities of daily living (ADLs) without undue discomfort. Observations verifying these outcomes would include sleeping soundly for at least four hours at a time, absence of facial grimaces, and absence of listlessness [36].



Nursing interventions related to pruritus are successful if the patient has relief from itching, rests comfortably without scratching, performs ADLs without scratching, and does not interrupt skin integrity by scratching [36].

### **SKIN INTEGRITY**

Absence of pressure injuries or erythema at surgical and intravenous sites, normal temperature, and evidence that the patient is eating the prescribed diet support an outcome of maintaining or improving skin integrity [37].

### **THOUGHT PROCESSES**

Orientation to person, place, and time, absence of asterixis, and the ability to write one's name the same way on sequential days are evidence that a patient's thought processes are intact. If asterixis develops or changes in handwriting are noted, the nurse may need to modify plans and interventions [37].

### **NUTRITION**

Expected outcomes for improving nutritional status and knowledge of nutrition include the ability to list foods high in protein and potassium and low in salt and fats, evidence of increasing intake of well-balanced foods, and signs that nutritional deficiencies are being corrected. This can be a slow process. Consulting with the patient to make a list of favorite foods and seeing that those foods are served may improve consumption. Cultural and ethnic preferences should be considered in planning the diet [37].

### **GAS EXCHANGE**

One expected outcome might be the patient's ability to ambulate without oxygen supplementation. Another is return of the hemoglobin level to normal. There might be an absence of dyspnea on exertion; an absence of cyanosis; or increased energy (e.g., ability to engage in usual activities). If these data can be observed, the nursing plan may be considered successful [37].

### **FLUID VOLUME**

Expected outcomes related to fluid volume include good skin turgor, decreased circumference of edematous extremities or abdominal girth, and intake and output measurements are indications of correction of a fluid alteration. Correcting fluid volume alterations may take a long time, and several plans and revisions may be required [37].

### **TISSUE PERFUSION**

A blood pressure no greater than 140/80 mm Hg and normal hemoglobin and prothrombin time are indications of adequate tissue perfusion. However, it is important to remember that hemoglobin and hematocrit values and blood pressure readings may be deceiving if vascular dehydration is present [37].

---

## **CONGENITAL DISORDERS**

---

Congenital disorders of the hepatic and biliary system are present from birth, although they may not be visibly apparent or symptomatic until adulthood. These patients may seek medical care when symptoms of their disorder first appear or when exacerbations occur [46].

### **GILBERT SYNDROME**

Gilbert syndrome is a familial disorder characterized by a deficiency of glucuronide transferase, an enzyme necessary for conjugation of bilirubin. Due to the enzyme insufficiency, serum levels of unconjugated bilirubin rise, with consequent hyperbilirubinemia and icterus. No pathologic changes occur in the liver with this disorder, so liver function studies will yield normal results except for the elevated bilirubin levels. There is no hemolysis or obstruction [46; 47]. Differential diagnosis includes non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, autoimmune hepatitis, drug-induced hepatitis, and primary biliary or sclerosing cholangitis.

In general, there is no required treatment for Gilbert syndrome aside from symptom management. Steps should be taken to avoid potential triggers in order to minimize fluctuations in unconjugated bilirubin. If there is evidence of hepatic decompensation, the patient should be referred to a specialist for further evaluation.

### **ALAGILLE SYNDROME**

Alagille syndrome is a genetic disorder with manifestations in multiple systems throughout the body. Variability in presentation is seen even among individuals from the same family [48]. The major clinical manifestations of this disorder are bile duct paucity on liver biopsy, cholestasis, congenital cardiac defects (primarily involving the pulmonary arteries), butterfly vertebrae, ophthalmologic abnormalities, and characteristic facial features. The diagnosis is made through positive genetic testing and/or clinical diagnostic criteria.

Clinical management of Alagille syndrome is primarily supportive. For some patients, targeted therapy with ileal bile acid transporter inhibitors (e.g., maralixibat and odeixibat) may be indicated to increase the excretion of bile acids. In severe cases, liver transplantation may be indicated. Measures to address pruritus, xanthomas, and pain are recommended. Considering the multisystem manifestations of this syndrome, these patients benefit from care delivered by an interprofessional team, including physicians, nurses, dietitians, genetic counselors, and specialists.

Patients with Alagille syndrome should be monitored to allow for early identification of progression and potentially harmful complications. Liver function should be regularly assessed, and serum alpha-fetoprotein and liver ultrasound may be measured every six months [48].

## DISORDERS OF MULTIFACTORIAL ORIGIN

Disorders of multifactorial origin are those for which no single, specific etiologic agent has been identified. For the hepatobiliary system, cirrhosis is the major disease process of multifactorial origin [49].

### CIRRHOSIS

Cirrhosis is a chronic process in which the normal configuration of liver lobules is disrupted. Cell death occurs, and regeneration is associated with scarring. Nodular cells formed during regeneration distort the morphology of the liver and obstruct hepatic flow of blood and lymph. Eventually, cirrhosis leads to hepatic failure and portal hypertension [50].

Cirrhosis is the end stage of any chronic liver disease. In developed countries, the most common causes include nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, hepatitis infection, and excessive alcohol intake; in developing countries, hepatitis A and B infections are the most likely causes. There are two clinical categories of cirrhosis: compensated and decompensated. Patients who have compensated cirrhosis can be further categorized as:

- Stage 1: No varices, no ascites
- Stage 2: Varices, no ascites

Likewise, patients with decompensated cirrhosis may be staged as:

- Stage 3: Ascites with or without varices
- Stage 4: Bleeding with or without ascites

The diagnosis of cirrhosis can be made by clinical, laboratory, imaging, or liver stiffness findings. For patients with compensated cirrhosis, noninvasive parameters all may be normal and liver biopsy would be required for diagnosis. Decompensated cirrhosis is more easily diagnosed by laboratory analysis.

These patients are asymptomatic and overall have median survival times of more than 12 years. Presence of varices is the key prognostic factor for compensated patients and indicates higher likelihood of decompensation. The Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) score is used as a prognostic scoring system in cirrhosis based on two clinical and three laboratory parameters:

- Ascites:
  - None: 1 point
  - Diuretic-sensitive or mild/moderate: 2 points
  - Diuretic-refractory or tense: 3 points
- Encephalopathy:
  - None: 1 point
  - Episodic or overt grade 2: 2 points
  - Recurrent/chronic or grade 3-4: 3 points

- Albumin:
  - >3.5 g/dL: 1 point
  - 3.4-2.8 g/dL: 2 points
  - <2.8 g/dL: 3 points
- Bilirubin:
  - <2 mg/dL: 1 point
  - 2-3 mg/dL: 2 points
  - >3 mg/dL: 3 points
- International normalized ratio (INR):
  - <1.7: 1 point
  - 1.7-2.3: 2 points
  - >2.3: 3 points

In the original scoring system, nutritional status (normal, moderately altered, malnourished) was used instead of INR, which reflects the importance of sarcopenia in cirrhosis. Patients who score 5-6 points are mostly those with compensated cirrhosis. A score of 7-9 points indicates decompensated cirrhosis, but decompensation is "early." Those who score 10-15 points have later or "further" decompensated cirrhosis. One-year mortality ranges from 1% for mildest disease to 57% for patients with severe disease.

### Clinical Manifestations

Cirrhosis is often (but not invariably) part of a progressive disease that begins with fatty infiltration of the liver (steatosis) that progresses to fibrosis of the liver due to inflammation. If not adequately treated, cirrhosis can progress to hepatic failure. Cirrhosis may be related to nutritional disorders, biliary obstruction, hepatotoxicity, iron storage disorders, and alcohol ingestion. Histologic examination of the liver reveals fatty infiltration, cellular necrosis, and disruption of the lobes. Gross inspection reveals a "hobnail" appearance; the hepatic surface is often stippled and nodular [51].

Portal hypertension results in compensatory development of collateral blood vessels in the esophagus. These vessels, called esophageal varices, dilate as portal hypertension increases. Because such vessels are inadequate to accommodate the increased blood flow, hemorrhage may occur [51].

Patients with cirrhosis often have a characteristic appearance. Anorexia develops early in the course of the disease, resulting in significant weight loss. The skin is typically orange-yellow, the eyes are sunken, and the facial bones are prominent. The limbs are emaciated, but the abdomen is enlarged due to peripheral edema or ascites. Other symptoms include spider angiomas, palmar erythema, and changes in mental status [51].

### Therapeutic Measures

Hemorrhage of esophageal varices may be controlled temporarily by administering infusions of vasopressin, somatostatin, octreotide, or terlipressin to promote diffuse arterial vasoconstriction and to lower portal pressure by constricting the

splanchnic arterial bed. The infusion may be given systemically or via the superior mesenteric artery and administered for five days, according to current guidelines [52]. This provides only temporary control and is associated with complications, including systemic arterial hypertension and coronary vasoconstriction, possibly leading to myocardial infarction. Whole blood should be available for immediate infusion [52; 53; 54]. If medication administration is unsuccessful, gastric lavage with ice-cold saline, use of the Minnesota tube or Sengstaken-Blakemore tube, or portal-systemic shunting may be implemented to control bleeding temporarily.

As noted, hepatic encephalopathy is a complication of advanced cirrhosis [52; 54; 55]. Lactulose and antibiotics may be used to manage these patients.

Injection sclerotherapy, an alternative long-term control measure, may be performed as a bedside procedure. The patient can be sedated using diazepam (Valium), meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol), propofol, fentanyl (Sublimaze), midazolam (Versed), or ketamine (Ketalar). The medications used are at the discretion of the anesthesia provider and surgeon based on the patient's medical history. It is important to be familiar with each, along with their respective reversal agents [57; 58]. Sclerosing solutions are then injected directly into the bleeding varices by means of fiberoptic endoscopy. Potential complications include chest pain, transient fever, ulceration of the injection sites, and formation of strictures. Most are self-resolving; strictures may be treated by dilatation. Perforation, a major complication, is rare. If perforation does occur, it is treated by keeping the patient NPO, suctioning gastric contents, and administering antibiotic therapy; surgery is seldom required [52; 55; 56].

Prophylactic antibiotics are also administered to lower rates of infection, death, and early rebleeding. IV ceftriaxone has demonstrated the most positive results in randomized controlled trials [52].

### **Specific Nursing Measures**

It is important to emphasize that patients with cirrhosis must abstain from alcohol. Because cirrhosis is a chronic condition, most nursing interventions will be related to the patient's comfort. Teaching patients and the public about the effects of alcohol may have preventive benefits [59; 60; 61; 62].

Nursing measures for patients with esophageal hemorrhage include explaining treatments to the patient and assessing frequently to determine whether hemorrhage has ceased. As with any hemorrhage, the nurse is responsible for monitoring blood replacement therapy and administering vitamin K, as ordered. Bleeding esophageal varices create a crisis for patient and family. Timely explanations of ongoing interventions and anticipated results will help the patient cope with panic and fear of death. Providing nursing care in a decisive, supportive manner helps the patient regain control and to participate in

the therapy. To provide optimum crisis care, the nurse should assess the family support structure and provide information and support to significant others as well as the patient. Fluid restrictions are generally maintained at 1,000 mL per 24-hour period [59; 60; 61].

### **ALCOHOL-INDUCED LIVER DISEASE**

The spectrum of alcoholic liver disease includes fatty liver disease, alcoholic hepatitis, and cirrhosis. Most deaths from alcoholic cirrhosis are attributable to liver failure, bleeding esophageal varices, or kidney failure. It has been estimated that there are 14 million persons in the United States with alcohol use disorder, and approximately 10% of those with alcohol use disorder develop cirrhosis with continued heavy drinking [64; 65; 68].

#### **Portal Cirrhosis**

The metabolism of alcohol leads to chemical attack on certain membranes of the liver. But whether the damage is caused by acetaldehyde or other metabolites is unknown. Acetaldehyde is known to impede the mitochondrial electron transport system, which is responsible for oxidative metabolism and generation of ATP; as a result, the hydrogen ions that are generated in the mitochondria are shunted into lipid synthesis and cytogenesis. Abnormal accumulations of these substances are found in hepatocytes (fatty liver) and blood. Binding of acetaldehyde to other molecules impairs the detoxification of free radicals and synthesis of proteins. Acetaldehyde also promotes collagen synthesis and fibrogenesis. The lesions of hepatocellular injury tend to be most prevalent in the centrilobular area that surrounds the central vein, where the pathways for alcohol metabolism are concentrated. This is the part of the lobule that has the lowest oxygen tension; it is thought that the low oxygen concentration in this area of the liver may contribute to the damage [64; 65].

The amount of alcohol required to produce chronic liver disease varies widely, depending on body size, age, sex, and ethnicity, but the high end of the range is about 80 g/day for 10 to 12 years. This amount of alcohol can be in the form of 8 ounces of 86 proof (41% alcohol) whiskey, two bottles of wine, or six 12-ounce bottles of beer. Even after alcohol intake has stopped and all alcohol has been metabolized, the processes that damage liver cells may continue for many weeks and months. Clinical and chemical effects often become worse before the disease resolves. The accumulation of fat usually disappears within a few weeks, and cholestasis and inflammation also subside with time. However, fibrosis and scarring remain. The liver lobules become distorted as new liver cells regenerate and form nodules [64; 65].

Although the mechanism by which alcohol exerts its toxic effects on liver structure is somewhat uncertain, the changes that develop can be divided into three states: fatty changes, alcoholic hepatitis, and cirrhosis [65].

Fatty liver is characterized by the accumulation of fat in hepatocytes, a condition called steatosis. The liver becomes yellow and enlarges as a result of excessive fat accumulation. The pathogenesis of fatty liver is not completely understood and can depend on the amount of alcohol consumed, dietary fat content, body stores of fat, hormonal status, and other factors. There is evidence that ingestion of large amounts of alcohol can cause fatty liver changes even with an adequate diet. The fatty changes that occur with the ingestion of alcohol usually do not produce symptoms and are reversible after the alcohol intake has been discontinued [65; 68].

Alcoholic hepatitis is the intermediate state between fatty changes and cirrhosis. It often is seen after an abrupt increase in alcohol intake and is common in binge drinkers. Alcoholic hepatitis is characterized by inflammation and necrosis of liver cells. This stage usually is characterized by hepatic tenderness, pain, anorexia, nausea, fever, jaundice, ascites, and liver failure, but some people may be asymptomatic. The condition is always serious and sometimes fatal, with an associated mortality rate of 34%. The immediate prognosis correlates with severity of liver cell injury. In those who continue to drink, the acute phase often is followed by persistent alcoholic hepatitis with progression to cirrhosis in a matter of one to two years [65; 68].

#### Alcoholic Cirrhosis

Alcoholic cirrhosis and malnutrition is the end result of repeated bouts of drinking-related liver injury and designates the onset of end-stage alcoholic liver disease. The gross appearance of the early cirrhotic liver is one of fine, uniform nodules on its surface. The condition has traditionally been called monocular or Laënnec cirrhosis. With more advanced cirrhosis, regenerative processes cause the nodules to become larger and more irregular in size and shape. As this occurs, the nodules cause the liver to become relobulated through the formation of new portal tracts and venous outflow channels. The nodules may compress the hepatic veins, curtailing blood flow out of the liver and producing portal hypertension, extrahepatic portosystemic shunts, and cholestasis [64; 65; 69].

#### METABOLIC DYSFUNCTION-ASSOCIATED STEATOTIC LIVER DISEASE (MASLD)

Metabolic dysfunction-associated steatotic liver disease (MASLD) was previously referred to as nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) but was renamed in 2023 to better reflect the underlying pathophysiology and embrace affirmative, non-stigmatizing terminology [70]. It is caused by metabolic dysfunction that affects the liver. As noted, in the United States, it is the most frequently occurring form of chronic liver disease. The condition can range from simple steatosis (fatty infiltration of the liver) to nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (steatosis with inflammation and hepatocyte necrosis). Although steatosis alone does not appear to be progressive, approximately 10% to 15% of people with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis progress to

cirrhosis. Obesity, type 2 diabetes, metabolic syndrome, and hyperlipidemia are coexisting conditions frequently associated with fatty liver disease. The condition is also associated with other nutritional abnormalities, surgical conditions, drugs, and occupational exposure to toxins. Both rapid weight loss and parenteral nutrition may lead to MASLD. Jejunioleal bypass, a surgical procedure historically used for weight loss, has largely been abandoned for this reason [65; 71].

#### Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of MASLD is thought to involve both lipid accumulations with hepatocytes and formation of free radicals, in a manner similar to that which occurs with alcohol metabolism. The primary metabolic abnormalities leading to lipid accumulation are poorly understood but are thought to include alteration in pathways for uptake, synthesis, degradation, or secretion of hepatic lipids and resulting from insulin resistance. Obesity increases the synthesis and reduces the oxidation of free fatty acids. Type 2 diabetes or insulin resistance also increases adipose tissue lipolysis and the subsequent production of free fatty acids. When the capacity of the liver to export triglyceride is exceeded, excess fatty acids contribute to the formation of fatty liver. Abnormal lipid peroxidation ensues, followed by direct hepatocyte injury, release of toxic byproducts, inflammation, and fibrosis [65; 71].

#### Clinical Manifestations

MASLD is usually asymptomatic, although fatigue and discomfort in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen may be present. Mildly to moderately elevated serum levels of AST, ALT, or both are the most common and often the only abnormal laboratory findings. Other abnormalities, including hypoalbuminemia, a prolonged prothrombin time, and hyperbilirubinemia, may be present in persons with cirrhotic-stage liver disease. The diagnosis of MASLD requires the presence of >5% macrovesicular steatosis, inflammation, and liver cell ballooning, typically with a predominantly centrilobular distribution; this is usually demonstrated by imaging. Exclusion of alcohol as a cause of the disorder is also required [65; 72].

#### Treatment

The aim of treatment is to slow progression of MASLD and to prevent liver-related illness. Weight loss and exercise improve insulin resistance and are recommended in conjunction with treatment of associated metabolic disturbances. Alcohol use should be avoided. Disease progression is slow and the magnitude of disease-related morbidity and mortality is uncertain. One study has shown the use of statins and antioxidants such as vitamins A and E have been effective in reducing the odds of hepatic steatosis in patients with MASLD. Liver transplantation is an alternative for some with end-stage liver disease, but MASLD may reoccur in up to 39% of people post-liver transplantation [65; 72; 73; 74].

## INTRAHEPATIC BILIARY DISORDERS

Intrahepatic biliary diseases disrupt the flow of bile through the liver, causing cholestasis and biliary cirrhosis. Among the causes of intrahepatic biliary diseases are primary and secondary biliary cholangitis [55].

### Primary Biliary Cholangitis

Primary biliary cholangitis (PBC), formerly primary biliary cirrhosis, is a chronic disease of the liver characterized by the autoimmune destruction of intrapolar bile ducts causing cholestasis. The disease is seen most commonly in women 40 to 60 years of age. Familial occurrences of the disease are found between parents and children and among siblings. With the possible exception of a reportedly higher risk of a polymorphism of the gene for the vitamin D receptor, there are no clear genetic influences for the disorder. As with other autoimmune disorders, possible environmental triggers include infections and chemical agents [63].

### Clinical Manifestations

Primary biliary cholangitis is characterized by an insidious onset and progressive scarring and destruction of liver tissue. The liver becomes enlarged and takes on a green hue because of the accumulated bile. The earliest symptoms are unexplained pruritus, weight loss, and fatigue, followed by dark urine and pale stools. Osteoporosis occurs in 51% of women with the disorder. Jaundice is a late manifestation of the disorder, as are other signs of liver failure. Serum alkaline phosphatase levels are typically elevated [63].

### Diagnosis and Treatment

Diagnosis of primary biliary cholangitis is made when two of the following signs and symptoms are present [63]:

- Destruction of bile ducts and presence of nonsuppurative cholangitis on liver biopsy
- Cholestasis with alkaline phosphatase elevation for at least six months
- Presence of serum antimitochondrial antibodies

Treatment is largely symptomatic. Ursodeoxycholic acid (ursodiol), the only drug approved for treating primary biliary cholangitis, increases bile flow, decreases the toxicity of bile contents, and has been shown to decrease the rate of clinical deterioration. Cholestyramine, a bile acid-binding drug, may prove beneficial for treatment of pruritus. Colchicine, which acts to prevent leukocyte migration and phagocytosis, and methotrexate, a drug with immunosuppressive properties, have also resulted in reported benefits in terms of symptom relief. Corticosteroids have been shown to improve liver histology and serum liver function tests, but are associated with serious long-term side effects. Liver transplantation remains the only effective treatment for advanced disease. Primary biliary cirrhosis does not recur after liver transplantation if appropriate immunosuppression is used [63].

### Secondary Biliary Cholangitis

Secondary biliary cholangitis results from prolonged obstruction of the extrabiliary tree. The most common cause is cholelithiasis. Other causes of secondary biliary cirrhosis are malignant neoplasms of the biliary tree or head of the pancreas and strictures of the common duct caused by previous surgical procedures. Extrahepatic biliary cholangitis may benefit from surgical procedures designed to relieve the obstruction. The presence of dark urine is a sign that indicates emergent medical attention is necessary [64; 66; 67].

---

## INFECTIOUS AND INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS

---

Infectious and inflammatory disorders of the hepatobiliary system can involve the liver or the gallbladder. Hepatic infections may be associated with inflammation of hepatic cells, hyperplasia of Kupffer cells, bile stasis, or tissue necrosis. Biliary infections may be associated with dilation of the gallbladder, which will be filled with bile, pus, and blood. Although the signs and symptoms of different types of hepatitis are much the same, the major symptom present for all is anorexia [75; 76; 77].

### TOXIC AND DRUG-INDUCED HEPATITIS

Certain agents, including carbon tetrachloride, yellow phosphorus, and acetaminophen (in large doses), are hepatotoxins. When ingested or inhaled, they cause necrosis of hepatic cells. Hepatitis related to these substances is called toxic hepatitis [76; 78].

Varying patterns of hepatic dysfunction are seen in response to use of other drugs and anesthetic agents. For example, halothane, methyldopa, and isoniazid can produce hepatitis. Chlorpromazine, erythromycin estolate, and methimazole can cause intrahepatic cholestasis with jaundice. Phenylbutazone and the sulfonamides can produce granulomas within the liver [76; 78].

### Clinical Manifestations

Both drug-induced and toxic hepatitis are manifested by inflammation of hepatic cells, hyperplasia of Kupffer cells, and bile stasis; however, toxic hepatitis is also associated with acute cellular necrosis. The onset of both forms is similar to that of viral hepatitis from which they must be quickly distinguished if detoxification is to be initiated. Anorexia, jaundice, and hepatomegaly are common. In toxic hepatitis, the illness may progress rapidly, with rising fever, subdermal hemorrhage, and severe vomiting. Delirium, coma, and convulsions develop, and the patient dies within a few days. If the toxin is promptly identified and exposure is discontinued, however, the patient may recover quite rapidly. Cirrhosis sometimes develops after recovery [76; 78].

Drug-induced hepatitis may develop after repeated exposures have sensitized the patient to a drug. For this reason, any medication that causes pruritus or other symptoms of sensitivity should be immediately withdrawn and the sensitivity noted on the patient's record. Chills, fever, rash, pruritus, arthralgia, and nausea are early signs of drug-induced hepatitis. Icterus, hepatomegaly, and hepatic tenderness follow. The urine is dark. Symptoms may subside once the drug is withdrawn, but drug-induced hepatitis may be fatal, and postnecrotic cirrhosis also may develop [78; 79; 80; 81]. The anesthetic agent halothane has been linked to episodes of drug-induced hepatitis; therefore, anesthetics should be rotated for patients undergoing repeated surgical procedures [81].

### Therapeutic and Specific Nursing Measures

Treatment is directed at the removal of the toxin or sensitizing agent, if known. Early diagnosis is important. The history can yield useful findings regarding exposure to toxins or medications. Attention should focus on occupational history, possible exposure to hepatotoxins during hobby activities (e.g., furniture finishing), and medication history, including over-the-counter medications and self-prescribed vitamin therapy. Once the disease has been diagnosed, nursing care focuses on comfort measures and the replacement of blood, fluids, and electrolytes [75; 78].

### HEPATIC ABSCESS

Hepatic abscess is an invasion of the liver by micro-organisms producing a localized collection of pus in a cavity formed by destruction of tissue. Hepatic abscess may be caused by fungal, bacterial, or even protozoan infection. An infection anywhere in the body can lead to formation of an hepatic abscess, but gastrointestinal infections are especially likely to do so [75; 76; 82; 83].

Usually, micro-organisms that invade the liver are destroyed by the phagocytic Kupffer cells, but occasionally a few survive. The lobular structure of the liver tends to keep the infection small and circumscribed, but several lobules may be affected. As the micro-organisms multiply, the toxins they produce destroy hepatic cells. Concurrently, the body's defense system acts to destroy the invading organisms, and the cavity becomes filled with a mixture of leukocytes, micro-organisms, and dead and necrotic hepatic cells [75; 76].

### Clinical Manifestations

Patients with hepatic abscess will have a high fever and a painfully enlarged liver, anemia, elevated WBC levels, and icterus. As the temperature rises, the patient has alternating episodes of chills and diaphoresis; toxic shock can occur within hours. If identified soon enough, the infective agent can be controlled with antimicrobial therapy. Sometimes, septicemia cannot be reversed, and the patient dies [76].

### Therapeutic Measures

Non-aspirin analgesics, intravenous fluid therapy, and parenteral antimicrobial agents may be prescribed. Occasionally, surgical intervention may be indicated to drain large abscessed areas or to resect an abscessed portion of the liver. This is done rarely, however, because coagulation abnormalities associated with liver dysfunction increase the risk of severe hemorrhage. The most common surgical intervention is percutaneous drainage. This may be done intermittently, or continuous catheter drainage may be employed [76].

### Specific Nursing Measures

Continual assessment is a crucial part of nursing care. A patient history should include inquiry regarding recent (within past six months) infection and presence of diabetes or insulin resistance [20].

Hourly monitoring of temperature and vital signs may be required to estimate whether the patient is becoming septic or whether antimicrobial therapy is taking effect. Hepatic abscess is accompanied by pain and fever, so supportive care with comfort measures is necessary. If surgical intervention is indicated or drainage initiated, the nurse will teach the patient about the procedure, provide reassurance, and assess for hemorrhage [20].

### VIRAL HEPATITIS

Hepatitis is an inflammatory state of the liver and may be caused by exposure to toxic chemicals, autoimmune disease, fatty liver disease, or infection. Many common viral infections in humans are associated with mild, usually transient, secondary inflammation of the liver. The term "viral hepatitis" is applied to infection caused by a set of viruses unique in their primary tropism for the liver and their propensity to cause serious, often prolonged "primary" hepatitis. For clinical purposes, the viruses causing primary hepatitis are grouped and classified alphabetically in accordance with when each was identified: hepatitis A, B, C, D, and E. In 1994, hepatitis F was identified as a cause of fulminant liver failure [84]. This was later found to be a variant subspecies of another virus. Therefore, "F" is now omitted in the hepatitis alphabet. A virus similar in structure to hepatitis C was initially designated hepatitis G; however, this virus has been reclassified as a Pegivirus GB virus-C (GBV-C) [85]. This virus can cause subclinical infection in humans but is not linked to active disease.

### Hepatitis A

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates the annual worldwide incidence of hepatitis A to be 1.5 million per year [86]. Within the United States, diagnosed cases of hepatitis A virus must be reported to the local health authorities, who in turn report the incidence to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Many persons who contract hepatitis A virus, however, do not have clinical symptoms. Therefore, the CDC must estimate the actual incidence of hepatitis A virus

infection based upon CDC reports and projections. For the 10-year period 1999 to 2009, the CDC estimates that 749,000 cases occurred within the United States [87].

Since the introduction of hepatitis A vaccine in 1995, the incidence of hepatitis A in the United States has declined by 95% [87]. However, after falling to a low of 1,239 cases reported in 2014, a series of outbreaks from 2013 to 2023 resulted in a dramatic increase in cases, reaching 12,474 reported cases in 2018 and 18,846 in 2019 [88]. According to the CDC, the increase in incidence was primarily the result of contaminated organic fruit, including strawberries, pomegranate seeds, blackberries, and a mixed antioxidant blend [88].

Hepatitis A is transmitted via the fecal-oral route, most commonly from contaminated water or food. After the virus is ingested, it is transported from the intestines to the liver, where it invades the hepatocytes. The virus uses the hepatocytes for viral replication and is then released into the bloodstream and excreted in the stool. HAV that is acquired percutaneously travels directly from the bloodstream to the liver to invade the hepatocytes; viral replication and excretion follow the same pattern as in fecal-oral transmission.

### **Clinical Manifestations**

Signs and symptoms of hepatitis A infection can vary from subclinical disease to fulminant (sudden and intense) illness. In symptomatic patients, the incubation period (i.e., time from exposure to onset of illness) is in the range of 15 to 50 days (average: 28 days). Clinical symptoms and signs include nausea, vomiting, headache, fever, chills, abdominal discomfort, hepatomegaly, and right upper quadrant tenderness. For most patients, symptoms are mild and subside in three to seven days. Others will have more significant disease and will progress to an icteric phase (jaundice). For these patients, recovery typically occurs after about three weeks.

Fulminant infection occurs in less than 1% of the cases. Some of these patients may have such severe damage that they require a liver transplant. Fatalities from hepatitis A are extremely rare. There is no known chronic carrier state.

Laboratory studies reflect leukopenia, atypical lymphocytes, and elevated ALT and AST levels. As discussed, anti-HAV IgM can be detected early in the disease, usually appearing in detectable levels 2 to 3 weeks after exposure, then declining to undetectable levels in 12 to 24 weeks. IgG levels begin to rise three to four weeks after exposure and remain elevated throughout life.

### **Therapeutic Measures and Prevention**

Treatment of HAV is supportive and directed at maintaining adequate nutrition and controlling symptoms. Ingestion of alcohol and/or hepatotoxic medications is avoided. For patients with fulminant hepatic failure resulting from HAV, corticosteroids may be used. However, clinical research has not demonstrated improved outcomes in patients receiving

corticosteroids when compared with those who did not receive steroid treatment [89].

As with any other disease, prevention is the most effective strategy. Hepatitis A vaccine is licensed in the United States for use in individuals 1 year of age and older. Immunoglobulin (Ig) can provide short-term protection, both pre- and post-exposure (administered within two weeks after exposure for maximum protection).

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved two single-antigen HAV vaccines and one combination vaccine for use in the United States, all of which are inactivated vaccines. The single-antigen vaccines are Havrix and VAQTA. Both are administered to adults in a dose of 1 mL intramuscularly. The dose for children is 0.5 mL [90]. Single-antigen vaccines are considered interchangeable. A second dose of either vaccine can be administered, regardless of which vaccine was administered as the first dose.

An alternative to single-antigen HAV vaccines is Twinrix, which contains inactivated HAV and HBV recombinant vaccines. It is immunogenic against HAV and HBV but requires three injections of 1 mL intramuscularly. The suggested schedule is an initial injection followed by boosters at one and six months. This vaccine is not approved for use in children. Immunity is expected to persist for at least 20 years (and possibly longer) in those who receive all three doses [90; 91].

Passive immunization with human Ig, preferably administered within two weeks of known or anticipated exposure, provides short-term protection against HAV infection for persons who have not been vaccinated. The single human Ig product licensed for hepatitis A prophylaxis in the United States is GamaSTAN S/D.

Sanitation strategies are also important in controlling HAV. If in water, the virus is inactivated by boiling the water for five minutes. Hand hygiene using alcohol-based hand sanitizers containing 60% to 95% ethanol are ineffective against HAV, even when in contact with the virus for a full two minutes [92; 93]. Therefore, handwashing with soap and water for at least 20 seconds is recommended rather than hygiene using hand sanitizers. If handwashing with soap and water is not an option, cleansing the hands with povidone-iodine for at least 30 seconds may be considered.

### **Specific Nursing Measures**

Persons with hepatitis A may often be cared for at home. Hospitalized patients will require enteric isolation and interventions for alternation in comfort (pruritus and pain), nutritional intake, and fluid volume; impairment of skin integrity and O<sub>2</sub>/CO<sub>2</sub> exchange; and disturbances in self-concept. Persons giving care in the home should wear gloves if contact with feces is possible. Gowns should be worn in any situation in which gross soiling occurs. Careful attention to handwashing is essential for patients and for those giving care [95].

Discharge planning for hospitalized patients includes encouraging the patient to get ample rest, ingest a well-balanced diet, and avoid alcohol and over-the-counter medications for at least six months. There is no chronic carrier state with hepatitis A. The patient will not progress to chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis [95].

### Hepatitis B

The hepatitis B virus is one of the smallest viruses known to cause disease in animals. Ten HBV genotypes, labeled A through J, and 30 subtypes have been identified [96]. The genotype of the virus influences the likelihood of developing cirrhosis and the response of the virus to therapy with interferon.

HBV consists of a core and an envelope. The envelope contains HBsAg proteins, glycoprotein, and lipids. The core of HBV includes viral DNA, enzymes necessary for replication, and antigenic protein particles distinctly different from those found in the envelope. The viral DNA is circular and predominantly double stranded, but with a single-stranded arc. The core antigen is termed HBcAg.

HBV is a bloodborne pathogen that is typically acquired parenterally, perinatally, or through sexual interaction. As with HIV infection, sexual contact and use of contaminated needles for drug injection are the primary risk factors for HBV [97]. However, HBV is considered 50 to 100 times more infectious than HIV, requiring a much smaller inoculum for transmission. Thus, a needlestick injury from a source patient who is coinfecting with both HBV and HIV is more likely to transmit HBV, even when the needle is solid (e.g., a suture needle) and even when blood is not visible. Because HBV does not transfer across the placenta, perinatal transmission occurs when an infant is exposed to the blood of an infected mother at the time of delivery. Parenteral exposures include occupational exposure of healthcare workers (1%), use of injected drugs (15%), tattoos, ear and body piercing, acupuncture, and blood transfusions received prior to 1980. Rare cases of transfusion-associated HBV continue to occur, indicating that the virus was present in the blood but with antigen levels below the level of laboratory detection [98].

### Clinical Manifestations

The incubation period for HBV can be as little as 45 days or as long as 180 days, but most commonly is 60 to 90 days. The severity of primary HBV infection varies from subclinical to fulminant illness. The age of the patient, the integrity of the immune system, and the infecting dose of the virus influence the severity of acute disease. Persons younger than 5 years of age exhibit mild symptoms or no symptoms, while 70% of infected adults exhibit significant clinical symptoms [99].

Signs and symptoms associated with acute HBV infection are similar to those of other acute viral hepatitis syndromes and include malaise, nausea, abdominal discomfort, icterus, and dark urine. Physical examination of the patient typically reveals an enlarged, tender liver and a yellowish hue to the skin. The

spleen is palpable in some patients. In patients with fulminant hepatitis, progressive signs of hepatic encephalopathy (e.g., somnolence, confusion, stupor, coma) are common.

### Therapeutic Measures

There is no specific treatment for acute HBV infection; management is primarily supportive. Control of nausea and vomiting, maintenance of fluid and electrolyte balance, avoidance of potentially hepatotoxic drugs and alcohol, and extended periods of rest are the typical therapies.

In less than 1% of cases, fulminant acute liver failure develops. Treatment for fulminant hepatic failure includes compensating for coagulation defects, correcting acid-base as well as fluid and electrolyte disturbances, prevention of hypoglycemia, administering prophylactic antibiotics, and therapies to reduce ammonia levels and combat cerebral edema. With aggressive therapy, improved intensive care and the use of orthotopic liver transplantation, the mortality rate for fulminant acute hepatic failure has gone down to 40% [100].

### Preventive Measures

As with hepatitis A, prevention is the best method for dealing with hepatitis B. Hepatitis B vaccine has been available since the 1980s and has been recommended as a routine childhood immunization since the early 1990s. Hepatitis B vaccine is available in the United States in seven different formulations. Of those seven formulations, only Engerix-B and Recombivax-HB are approved for neonates and in pregnancy. Other HBV vaccines include Heplisav-B and PreHevbrio. Combination vaccines that include HBV vaccine in the formulation include Twinrix (providing immunization against HAV and HBV), Pediarix (containing diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, acellular pertussis antigens, recombinant HBsAg, and inactivated poliovirus) and Vaxelis (containing diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, acellular pertussis antigens, inactivated poliovirus, recombinant HBsAg, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b) [99].

Hepatitis B vaccine is typically administered as a series of three intramuscular injections, the second and third doses given at one month and six months, respectively, after the first dose [99]. In 2017, a two-dose series hepatitis B vaccine for unvaccinated or incompletely vaccinated individuals 18 years of age and older was approved by the FDA [101; 102]. In addition, evidence has indicated that two injections may be sufficient to achieve protection if administered in adolescence [99]. The ACIP recommends all adults 19 to 59 years of age and adults 60 years of age and older with risk factors for hepatitis B infection should receive hepatitis B vaccination [103]. Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIG) should be administered to infants weighing at least 2,000 grams born to persons with hepatitis B infection within 12 hours of birth, followed by completion of the vaccine series and postvaccination serologic testing. These neonates should receive hepatitis B vaccination within 24 hours of birth, followed by completion of the vaccine series. If the HBsAg-exposed neonate weighs



less than 2,000 grams, the first dose of vaccine should not be counted as part of the three-dose series. Instead, the series is administered when the infant attains a weight of 2,000 grams or 1 month of age, whichever comes first, and at 2 and 7 months of age. All unvaccinated children and adolescents younger than 19 years of age also should receive the vaccine [94].

Persons who have not been immunized (or did not respond to the vaccine) and are exposed to hepatitis B virus may achieve passive protection from infection by receiving HBIG within seven days of exposure. The usual dose of HBIG is 0.06 mL/kg. For persons who have not been immunized, an accelerated schedule of immunizations is recommended following the dose of HBIG. For documented nonresponders, a second dose of HBIG is appropriate.

Strict adherence to Standard Precautions is recommended in order to prevent exposure to hepatitis B virus or other bloodborne pathogens. Careful handling of needles is also imperative. Because of the hardiness of HBV even in adverse conditions, caution should be used when cleansing objects contaminated with blood or body secretions, regardless of whether or not the body fluids have dried.

Hepatitis B can be inactivated on surfaces with the use of 1:10 bleach solution or hospital-grade disinfectant. Unlike hepatitis A virus, alcohol-based hand sanitizers, used for 30 seconds, are effective against HBV [92].

### Hepatitis C

HCV is a single-stranded RNA virus, with properties similar to those of the flaviviruses, a genus of the family of Flaviviridae that includes yellow fever and St. Louis encephalitis viruses. The genome contains a single open reading frame that encodes a polyprotein of about 3,000 amino acids. The transcript is cleaved into single proteins, including three structural proteins (one core and two envelope proteins) and four nonstructural proteins. The virus is genetically unstable, which leads to multiple genotypes and subtypes.

HCV is considered a bloodborne pathogen. The most common source of infection is percutaneous or parenteral exposure through transfusion, use of injectable drugs, and occupational injury of healthcare providers with a contaminated sharp object. The blood supply in the United States has been tested for hepatitis C since the early 1990s. Now that more advanced screening tests for HCV are used in blood banks, the risk is considered to be less than 1 chance per 2 million units transfused [104]. Therefore, the annual incidence rate of HCV transmission from transfusion therapy since 1994 is less than one case per 100,000 population. In 2016, the CDC issued a health advisory due to an increasing number of acute HCV infections among persons undergoing hemodialysis [105].

Hepatitis C virus is the leading cause of end-stage liver disease and the leading reason for liver transplantation in the United States [104; 106]. Chronic HCV infection has also been

associated with membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, cryoglobulinemia, and B-cell lymphoma [104]. Coinfection of HCV with HIV occurs in 50% to 90% of persons who acquired HIV through injection drug use [107].

HCV occurs throughout the world, with endemic rates varying widely. The WHO estimates that 10% of the population of the Middle East, Africa, and Eastern Europe are infected with HCV. In the United States, an estimated 1.8% of the population (approximately 4 million people) is infected with HCV, and only about half of those infected are aware that they are. Rates of HCV in the United States have increased dramatically since 2010. This has been primarily attributed to the nation's opioid crisis and increased infection among injecting drug users. In 2021, 5,023 new cases of acute HCV were reported, an increase of 492% since 2010 and 129% since 2014 [108]. After adjusting for under-ascertainment and under-reporting, an estimated 69,800 acute hepatitis C cases occurred in 2021 [108]. In addition, 107,540 cases of newly identified chronic hepatitis C were reported in 2021 [108].

### Clinical Manifestations

The incubation period for HCV varies widely, from a mean of 7 to 10 weeks and a range of 2 to 20 weeks. HCV antibody is detectable in 80% of cases 15 weeks after exposure and in 97% of cases by 6 months after exposure. People with recently acquired acute infection typically have detectable HCV RNA levels as early as one to two weeks after exposure to the virus [104]. During the acute phase of the infection, 60% to 70% of HCV positive persons will be asymptomatic; approximately 20% of patients will develop mild jaundice, and the remaining persons will have generalized nonspecific symptoms, such as anorexia, nausea, fatigue, malaise, and abdominal pain. During this phase, serum ALT and AST levels are elevated then return to normal range. Fulminant acute hepatitis associated with HCV is rare [100; 109].

After the acute infection, 15% to 25% of patients will demonstrate an absence of HCV RNA in the serum and normalization of liver enzymes, within six months indicating resolution of the infection and clearance of the virus from the body. The presence of detectable HCV RNA in persons who test positive for HCV antibody is 74% in the general population. However, the rate of progression to chronic infection is higher in some subpopulations. In particular, the progression rate is more than 90% in African American individuals and as high as 98% in African American men. In those persons in whom HCV RNA remains detectable, indicating continued presence of the virus, 30% to 40% will maintain normal ALT levels and will show no evidence of chronic liver disease. The remaining 60% to 70% of chronically infected patients will have fluctuating ALT levels indicative of chronic liver disease and risk of subsequent progression to cirrhosis. On rare occasions, a patient will demonstrate positive HCV RNA without the presence of HCV antibody. Therefore, in a patient who exhibits chronic hepatitis without apparent cause, assessment of HCV RNA may be indicated [104; 110].

Chronic hepatitis from HCV infection usually progresses slowly, with cirrhosis developing in 20% to 25% of patients over a period of 20 to 30 years. However, persons with HCV infection whose daily ethanol consumption exceeds 50 g (about 3.5 standard drinks) per day are twice as likely as nondrinkers to develop cirrhosis and progress to cirrhosis more quickly (in as little as 10 years) [111]. Of those with cirrhosis, 25% eventually develop hepatocellular carcinoma. Persons who ingest alcohol or who were older than 40 years of age at the onset of infection have a more rapid progression of cirrhosis. Men have a higher incidence of cirrhosis than women. Persons with MASLD and those receiving immunosuppressive therapy are also more likely to progress to cirrhosis [112].

Because acute HCV infection can be asymptomatic, the first indication of the presence of chronic HCV infection may be elevated liver enzymes on laboratory testing obtained in connection with another clinical condition or routine health examination. In evaluating the cause of liver enzyme elevation, a hepatitis panel is typically ordered. Testing for the presence of HCV RNA has become the accepted method of confirming current HCV infection (acute or chronic) [104]. Qualitative HCV RNA testing determines whether or not hepatitis C viral particles are present in the blood and can therefore differentiate between resolved and continued infection. Quantitative HCV RNA testing evaluates the amount of hepatitis C virus in the blood and can be used to guide therapy [104; 113]. In most commercial laboratories, a positive HCV antibody test triggers a reflex test for quantitative HCV RNA; qualitative HCV RNA is rarely performed.

### **Therapeutic Measures**

Based upon genetic characteristics, eight genotypes and more than 90 different subtypes of HCV virus have been identified. Because the genotypes respond differently to therapy, genotypic testing should be performed for persons with chronic progressive HCV infection who are considering antiviral therapy [104]. In the United States, genotype 1 accounts for 60% to 75% of HCV infections and genotypes 2 and 3 account for about 25% [114].

The treatment of HCV infection has advanced rapidly following the introduction of anti-HCV protease inhibitors in 2011. These newer, direct-acting antiviral drug combinations are highly effective and relatively free of side effects; thus, therapy is now considered for virtually all patients diagnosed with HCV infection [115]. In order to provide healthcare professionals with timely guidance, the IDSA and the AASLD have developed evidence-based recommendations for the diagnosis and management of hepatitis C infection, last updated in 2023. However, due to the rapidly evolving nature of new therapies and other developments, the IDSA and the AASLD recommend reviewing current recommendations online, available at <https://www.hcvguidelines.org> [115].

The IDSA/AASLD 2023 guidelines emphasize that treatment is recommended for all patients with chronic HCV infection, except those with a short life expectancy that cannot be remedi-

ated by HCV therapy, liver transplantation, or another directed therapy [115]. Prior to treatment, patients should be educated regarding proper administration of medications, adherence, and prevention of reinfection. Pretreatment assessment to facilitate decision making regarding the treatment strategy and to determine the need for initiating additional measures for the management of cirrhosis (e.g., hepatocellular carcinoma screening) is recommended in all patients.

During treatment, routine laboratory monitoring of hepatic function or inflammation is not indicated in persons without advanced liver disease. Because of drug-drug interactions between warfarin and direct-acting antiviral therapy, periodic INR should be assessed for patients on warfarin in order to evaluate for subtherapeutic anticoagulation. Drug-drug interactions of direct-acting antiviral therapy and medications used to treat type 2 diabetes can lead to hypoglycemia. Thus, persons on oral diabetes medications should be counseled about the potential for this interaction. No other laboratory studies are required for monitoring.

HCV quantitative RNA should be assessed 12 to 24 weeks after the conclusion of the recommended course of therapy. Persons with sustained virological response at 12 weeks or greater have less than 1% chance of re-emergence of the original infection. They can, however, become re-infected if high-risk practices are continued or re-initiated.

Achieving and maintaining SVR has positive effects on both hepatic and extrahepatic manifestations of HCV infection. These improvements include fibrosis regression, reduction in portal hypertension, reduction in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma, reduced incidence of myocardial infarction, reduced incidence of stroke, lower rate of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes, improved quality of life, and lower all-cause mortality rate [116].

Even in compliant patients, treatment failures can occur. Factors that correlate with treatment failure include degree of fibrosis; the presence of advanced fibrosis in genotype 3 is particularly prone to treatment failure. Other factors that can affect treatment success include age older than 55 years, male sex, and Hispanic or Black ethnicity/race. Fortunately, prior treatment with interferon-based regimens does not usually prevent achieving SVR with direct-acting antiviral therapy. However, prior incomplete or inconsistent treatment with direct-acting antiviral therapy can lead to medication-resistant infection and treatment failure [117]. Patients who experience treatment failure should be referred to a specialist for retreatment. Monitoring of liver function should be continued by the specialist or primary care provider at least every six months until retreatment is initiated [115].

As noted, infants who are noted perinatally exposed to HCV should have HCV RNA testing at 2 to 6 months of age. Repeat HCV RNA testing, with genotype determination, should be performed when the child is 3 years of age. If viremia remains and genotype 1, 4, 5, or 6 is identified, a weight-based course of ledipasvir-sofosbuvir can be initiated, with an expected SVR

in 98% of children. For children with genotype 1-6 and no evidence of fibrosis level 3 or 4, treatment with a weight-based dose of either sofosbuvir-velpatasvir or glecaprevir-pibrentasvir can be accomplished. After successful treatment with any of these three regimens, liver damage caused by HCV usually resolves and these children show no evidence or residual effects [115; 118].

For patients with cirrhosis secondary to chronic HCV or HBV infection that has gone untreated or failed therapy, liver transplantation may be indicated. Replacing the liver, however, does not cure the infection. The transplanted liver will also become infected, and immunosuppressive agents facilitate the progression of this infection. At present, chronic viral hepatitis is the most common diagnosis of persons receiving liver transplants in the United States [104].

### **Preventive Measures**

There is no vaccine to prevent hepatitis C. The best way to prevent hepatitis C is by avoiding behaviors that can spread the disease, especially injecting drugs with non-sterile injection equipment. Hepatitis C can spread when a person comes into contact with blood from an infected person. Injecting drugs is the most common way HCV is transmitted in the United States. For people who inject drugs, community-based prevention programs, such as medication-assisted treatment and syringe services programs, can reduce the transmission of HCV.

Although the risk of sexual transmission of HCV is considered to be low, avoiding unprotected sexual exposure by using condoms has been shown to reduce the chance of sexually transmitted infections.

### **Hepatitis D**

HCV is an RNA virus, the core of which is distinctively different from other viruses. However, due to a defect in replication, HCV is unable to synthesize a viral coat. It must borrow a coat from HBV in order to complete the replication process. Therefore, HCV cannot cause infection independently but instead must exist as a coinfection (acquired at the same time as HBV) or a superinfection (HCV acquired in a patient who is chronically infected with HBV). In the United States, the infection primarily occurs as a coinfection among intravenous drug users. In some areas of the world in which chronic HBV infection is endemic (including the Amazon Basin of South America, China, and Southeast Asia), HCV is more commonly a superinfection [119; 120].

Patients coinfecting with HBV and HCV tend to have a more severe case of acute hepatitis. The mortality rate in coinfection has been reported to be as high as 20%. Superinfection with HCV results in rapid progression of cirrhosis, with 70% to 80% of coinfecting individuals showing signs of liver failure, compared to 15% to 30% of patients with chronic HBV and no cirrhosis [121]. Prevention of HCV is accomplished through the same means as prevention of hepatitis B. A 12-month course of peginterferon alfa-2a is the recommended treatment

for patients with elevated HCV-RNA levels and ALT elevation [96]. Nearly 25% of patients involved in an efficacy study of peginterferon alfa-2a treatment showed sustained clearance of HCV RNA over 48 weeks [122]. Given the limited efficacy of current therapies, it is reasonable to refer patients to specialized centers that offer access to experimental therapies for HCV [96]. Immunization against hepatitis B is effective prevention of HCV also because if the individual is immune to HBV, he/she cannot become infected with HCV. Avoidance of bloodborne pathogen exposure through observance of Standard Precautions is a primary mechanism of prevention for persons already chronically infected with HBV.

### **Hepatitis E**

Like hepatitis A, hepatitis E virus is spread through the fecal-oral route, and like HAV, HEV was also first identified via electron microscope examination of stools of infected patients. HEV has been associated with outbreaks in India, Burma, Pakistan, Russia, China, northern and central Africa, Peru, and Mexico. Outbreaks are usually associated with a contaminated water supply. No outbreaks have occurred in the United States or Western Europe, though individual cases have been identified in persons who have recently traveled to areas in which the virus is endemic [119; 123].

HEV most often affects young adults. The incubation period is two to nine weeks, with an average of six weeks. Signs and symptoms are similar to HAV, but with a higher incidence of jaundice, which can be prolonged. The disease is self-limited in the majority of patients. The fatality rate in acute HEV is between 1% and 2%, except in pregnant women. In pregnant women with HEV infection, mortality can reach as high as 30% [123]. No cases of chronic liver disease associated with HEV have been reported.

The treatment of HEV is nonspecific and is directed toward supportive care. Because the incidence of HEV is low and most cases resolve without negative sequelae, the development of a vaccine against HEV has not been a priority for pharmaceutical companies or national and international health agencies. Primary preventive strategies, therefore, concentrate on improved sanitation [123; 124].

### **AUTOIMMUNE HEPATITIS**

Autoimmune hepatitis is a severe type of chronic hepatitis that is associated with interface hepatitis, circulating autoantibodies, and hypergammaglobulinemia. Although the disorder is usually seen in young women, it can occur in either sex at any age.

Clinical and laboratory observations have led to the hypothesis that autoimmune hepatitis is a multifactorial disorder, with genetic and environmental factors playing important roles. Most knowledge of the genetics of the disease comes from the human leukocyte antigen (HLA), located on the short arm of chromosome 6. The environmental agents assumed to induce autoimmune hepatitis have not been delineated but include viruses and chemical agents [126; 127].

Two distinct types of autoimmune hepatitis have been identified. Type 1 autoimmune hepatitis, the most common form of the disease, is characterized by increased levels of anti-smooth muscle and antinuclear autoantibodies. Approximately 78% of cases occur in women, and 38% of patients with autoimmune hepatitis also have other autoimmune diseases. Susceptibility to type 1 autoimmune hepatitis resides mainly with the *HLA-DRB1* gene.

Type 2 autoimmune hepatitis occurs mainly in children 2 to 14 years of age and is characterized by the presence of antibody to liver and kidney microsomes and liver cytosol. The disorder is often accompanied by other autoimmune disorders, especially type 1 diabetes, vitiligo, and thyroiditis. The genetic component for this type of autoimmune hepatitis is less well defined [126; 127].

### Clinical Manifestations

Clinical manifestations of the disorder covers a spectrum that extends from no apparent symptoms to signs of inflammatory liver disease or cirrhosis. Physical examination may reveal no abnormalities but may also reveal hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, jaundice, and signs and symptoms of chronic liver disease. In asymptomatic cases, the disorder may be discovered when abdominal serum enzyme levels are identified during performance of routine screening tests [126; 127].

### Diagnosis and Treatment

The differential diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis includes measures to exclude other causes of liver disease, including hepatitis B and C. A characteristic laboratory finding is that of a marked elevation in serum gamma globulins [126; 127].

Corticosteroid and immunosuppressant drugs are the treatments of choice for this type of hepatitis. Although some people remain in remission after drug treatment is withdrawn, most require long-term maintenance therapy. Liver transplantation may be required for those who are refractory to or intolerant of immunosuppressive therapy and in whom end-stage liver disease develops. All hepatotoxic medications should be avoided, even analgesics such as acetaminophen [125; 126; 127].

## CHOLECYSTITIS

Cholecystitis is an inflammation of the gallbladder, and it may be either acute or chronic. An acute inflammation may begin in the mucosal layer as a primary infection. More often, it is superimposed on a chronic infection initially related to cholelithiasis (also known as gallstones). The gallbladder becomes dilated and filled with bile, pus, and blood. Common infective organisms include staphylococci, streptococci, and enteric organisms [128; 129].

### Clinical Manifestations

Major symptoms of cholecystitis are intense pain, tenderness, and rigidity in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen associated with nausea, vomiting, and the usual signs of inflammation. Jaundice and icteric color of the sclera may be present if

there is an obstruction. If the gallbladder is filled with frankly purulent matter, the condition is called empyema of the gallbladder. Although chronic cholecystitis may be related to an acute attack, it is almost always associated with cholestasis. Stools may be clay colored due to a stone obstructing flow of bile [128; 129].

### Therapeutic Measures

Laparoscopic cholecystectomy may be indicated after acute inflammation has been relieved by medical intervention. The condition typically resolves following treatment of cholelithiasis [128; 129].

---

## NEOPLASTIC AND OBSTRUCTIVE DISORDERS

---

### CANCER OF THE LIVER

There are two major types of primary liver cancers: hepatocellular carcinoma, which arises from the liver cells, and cholangiocarcinoma, which is a primary cancer of bile duct cells [125].

#### Hepatocellular Carcinoma

Hepatocellular cancer (HCC) accounted for 41,210 new cases of liver cancer in the United States in 2023, making it the most common form of liver cancer. Globally, HCC was identified as the cause for nearly 906,000 new liver cancer cases and 830,000 deaths in 2020 [130]. In recent decades, there has been increased incidence in developed countries as a consequence of chronic HCV infection, and the incidence in the United States has more than tripled since 1980. Although primary tumors of the liver are relatively rare in developed countries of the world, the liver shares with the lung the distinction of being the most common site of metastatic tumor [125].

Among the factors identified as etiologic agents in liver cancer are chronic viral hepatitis (HBV, HCV, HDV), cirrhosis, smoking, heavy alcohol consumption, obesity, and long-term exposure to environmental agents (e.g., aflatoxin). The exact pathogenesis is unclear. With HBV and HCV, both of which become integrated into the host DNA, repeated cycles of cell death and regeneration afford the potential for development of cancer-producing mutations. Aflatoxin, produced by food spoilage molds (e.g., *Aspergillus flavus* and *Aspergillus parasiticus*), is a known human carcinogen and is endemic in certain areas. A particularly susceptible site for aflatoxin mutation is the *TP53* tumor suppressor gene [125].

#### Clinical Manifestations and Diagnosis

The manifestations of HCC often are insidious in onset and masked by those related to cirrhosis or chronic hepatitis. The initial signs and symptoms include weakness, anorexia, weight loss, fatigue abdominal swelling, a sensation of abdominal fullness, and a dull, aching abdominal pain. Ascites, which can obscure weight loss, is common. Jaundice, if present, usually is mild. There may be a rapid increase in liver size and worsening

of ascites in people with pre-existing cirrhosis. Usually, the liver is enlarged when these symptoms appear. Various paraneoplastic syndromes (disturbances due to ectopic hormone or growth factor productions by the tumor) have been associated with hepatocellular cancer, including erythrocytosis, hypoglycemia, and hypercalcemia. Serum  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein is present during fetal life but barely detectable in the serum after 2 years of age. When high levels of  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein are found in adults, it is usually indicative of hepatocellular carcinoma, although not all primary liver cancers produce  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein.

Additional imaging, such as ultrasonography, computed tomography (CT) scan, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), are recommended for diagnosis. Liver biopsy may be used to confirm the diagnosis [131; 132; 133; 134]. Genetic testing can reveal susceptibility.

### Treatment

There is no agreement on a single treatment strategy for patients with HCC. Selection of treatment is complex due to several factors, including [135]:

- Underlying liver function
- Extent and location of the tumor
- General condition of the patient

Several treatments for HCC are associated with long-term survival, including surgical resection, liver transplant, and ablation. There are no large, robust, randomized studies that compare treatments considered effective for early-stage disease, nor are there studies comparing these treatments with best supportive care. Often, patients with HCC are evaluated by a multidisciplinary team that includes hepatologists, radiologists, interventional radiologists, radiation oncologists, transplant surgeons, surgical oncologists, pathologists, and medical oncologists.

Best survival rates are achieved when the HCC can be removed either by surgical resection or liver transplant. Surgical resection is usually performed in patients with localized HCC and enough functional hepatic reserve. For patients with decompensated cirrhosis and a solitary lesion (<5 cm) or early multifocal disease (up to three lesions,  $\leq 3$  cm in diameter), the best option is liver transplant, but the limited availability of liver donors restricts the use of this approach.

Transarterial chemoembolization, multikinase inhibitors, and immunotherapy are noncurative treatments for HCC that improve survival. For patients with recurrent disease with metastases and/or vascular involvement, palliative therapy is the most appropriate approach [135].

### Cholangiocarcinoma

Cholangiocarcinoma, with an incidence of 1.6 per 100,000 in North America, occurs much less frequently than hepatocellular carcinoma [136]. The etiology, clinical features, and prognosis vary considerably with the part of the biliary tree that is the site of origin. Distal and perihilar bile duct cancers

frequently cause biliary tract obstruction, leading to the following symptoms [137]:

- Jaundice
- Weight loss
- Abdominal pain
- Fever
- Pruritus

Intrahepatic bile duct cancer may be relatively indolent and difficult to differentiate clinically from metastatic adenocarcinoma deposits in the liver.

Cholangiocarcinoma is not associated with the same risk factors as hepatocellular carcinoma. Instead, most of the risk factors revolve around long-standing inflammation and injury of the bile duct epithelium. Bile duct cancer may occur more frequently in patients with a history of primary sclerosing cholangitis, chronic ulcerative colitis, choledochal cysts, or infections with the liver fluke *Clonorchis sinensis* [137].

### Treatment

The treatment of bile duct cancer depends primarily on whether the cancer can be completely removed by surgery. Localized intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile duct cancer may be completely resected. However, these tumors represent a very small number of cases that are usually in the distal common bile duct. Among patients treated with surgical resection, long-term prognosis varies depending on primary tumor extent, margin status, lymph node involvement, and additional pathological features [137].

Extended resections of hepatic duct bifurcation tumors (also known as Klatskin or hilar tumors) to include adjacent liver, either by lobectomy or removal of portions of segments 4 and 5 of the liver, may be performed. If major hepatic resection is necessary to achieve a complete resection, postoperative hepatic reserve should be evaluated [137].

Unfortunately, most cases of intrahepatic, distal, and perihilar bile duct cancer are unresectable and cannot be completely removed. Often, the cancer invades directly into the portal vein, the adjacent liver, along the common bile duct, and to adjacent lymph nodes. Portal hypertension may result from invasion of the portal vein. Spread to distant parts of the body is uncommon, but intra-abdominal metastases, particularly peritoneal metastases, do occur. Transperitoneal and hematogenous hepatic metastases also occur with bile duct cancer of all sites. Moreover, most patients who undergo resection will develop recurrent disease within the hepatobiliary system or, less frequently, at distant sites.

In locally advanced disease, trials have evaluated chemoradiotherapy with the goal of improved local control and potential downstaging for surgical resection [137]. These approaches have not been compared with standard therapy, and the curative potential is unknown. For patients with unresectable bile duct cancer, management is directed at palliation.

### Metastatic Tumors

Metastatic tumors of the liver are much more common than primary tumors. Common sources include colorectal cancer and those spread from breast, colon, lung, or urogenital cancer. In addition, tumors of neuroendocrine origin can spread to the liver. It often is difficult to distinguish primary from metastatic tumors with the use of CT scans, MRI, or ultrasonography. The diagnosis may be confirmed by biopsy [132; 133].

### CANCER OF THE GALLBLADDER

Cancer of the gallbladder is rare. In 2024, there will be an estimated 12,350 new cases diagnosed and 4,530 deaths [138]. Malignant tumors are usually columnar cell carcinomas that cause symptoms of inflammation and obstruction. In part because of its rarity, biliary carcinoma may be overlooked or confused with cholelithiasis [139; 140]. The most common symptoms caused by gallbladder cancer are jaundice, pain, and fever.

#### Treatment

Patients with stage I disease have cancer confined to the gallbladder wall that can be completely resected. Patients with stage I tumors that are discovered incidentally and resected during routine cholecystectomy have five-year survival rates of nearly 100% [138]. Previously unsuspected gallbladder cancer that is incidentally discovered in the mucosa of the gallbladder during pathological examination is curable in more than 80% of patients. However, symptomatic gallbladder cancer that is suspected prior to surgery often penetrates the muscularis and serosa. This type of gallbladder cancer is curable in less than 5% of patients [138].

Treatment options for localized and locally advanced gallbladder cancer include [138]:

- Surgery
- External-beam radiation therapy (EBRT)
- Clinical trials exploring the use of radiation therapy and radiosensitizer drugs to improve local control

During laparoscopic removal of an unsuspected cancer, implantation of carcinoma at all port sites (including the camera site) is possible. All port sites are typically excised completely, even for stage I cancers.

Patients with T2 (tumor invades the perimuscular connective tissue on the peritoneal or hepatic side) or T3 (tumor perforates the serosa and/or directly invades the liver and/or one other adjacent organ or structure) disease have higher rates of unsuspected invasive disease at the time of diagnosis [138]. Eligible patients may undergo re-exploration to resect liver tissue near the gallbladder bed, portal lymph nodes, and lymphatic tissue in the hepatoduodenal ligament. Retrospective analyses suggest that extended re-resection can delay recurrences and potentially improve survival [138].

For patients with locoregional lymph node involvement (at the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and portal vein), long-term disease-free survival can occasionally be achieved with radical resection. In patients with jaundice, preoperative percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage for relief of biliary obstruction should be considered [138].

Surgery with curative intent is not considered possible in patients with metastatic spread beyond the locoregional lymph nodes or to distant organs [138].

The use of EBRT with or without chemotherapy as a primary treatment has been reported to produce short-term disease control in small groups of patients. Similar benefits have been reported for radiation therapy, with or without chemotherapy, administered after resection [138]. However, there is limited evidence supporting the use of adjuvant radiation therapy, even for patients with high-risk localized disease [138].

### CHOLELITHIASIS

Cholelithiasis, the formation of gallstones, can lead to obstruction of the bile ducts associated with obstructive icterus and severe, colicky pain. An estimated 20 million Americans have cholelithiasis, and almost 1 million new cases are diagnosed each year [129; 139; 140; 141].

Several predisposing factors are related to development of cholelithiasis [129; 139; 140; 141]. Women are affected four times as frequently as men, and taking oral contraceptives are twice as likely as other women to develop gallstones. Further, multigravidas women are more likely to develop the condition than those who have not been pregnant. Persons older than 40 years of age are affected more often than younger persons. High fat intake and cholesterol saturation of bile are considered predisposing factors, and obesity and diabetes are associated with increased risk of gallstone formation. Persons who have had extensive bowel resections (as for Crohn disease) have a threefold to fivefold higher incidence of cholelithiasis, possibly because recirculation of bile salts is interrupted.

Cholesterol saturating of bile appears to be a major factor in development of gallstones. The underlying cause may be dysfunction of the hepatic cells where bile is synthesized. Bile salts precipitate from supersaturated bile, forming nuclei for accretion of layers of cholesterol, calcium, and bilirubin to form calculi within the gallbladder.

Gallstones are classified as either cholesterol or pigment stones. Cholesterol stones are usually of mixed composition and contain more than 70% cholesterol plus calcium salts, bile pigments, fatty acids, and proteins. There is a high incidence of cholesterol stones in North America. Pigment stones are primarily calcium and bilirubin and contain less than 10% cholesterol. Pigment stones are less common in North America but have a high prevalence in Japan [139; 140; 141; 142].

**Clinical Manifestations**

Calculi formed in the gallbladder may move into the cystic duct, the common bile duct, or even into the liver via the hepatic ducts. Calculus obstruction of the pancreatic duct may cause pancreatitis [141; 143].

The most common symptom of cholelithiasis is colicky pain believed to be related to spasms of the sphincter of Oddi. Pain may also be related to obstruction and distention of a bile duct. Usually, the pain is felt in the epigastrium or the right upper quadrants of the abdomen, but it may radiate up the back between the scapulae to the right shoulder or around the abdomen to the back, making it difficult for the patient to assume a comfortable position. Some patients will report laying in the supine position often worsens the discomfort. Biliary colic may occur at varying intervals following meals or may wake the patient from sleep. Usually, symptoms occur at progressively shorter intervals after ingestion of almost any food. Occasionally, however, a single pain episode will never be repeated [129; 139; 140; 141].

In addition to the characteristic pain, nausea and vomiting are common, as is elevated temperature. Distention of the bile ducts stimulates the vomiting center. If the common bile duct is obstructed by a calculus, greenish-yellow jaundice develops. Pruritus often develops before the jaundice is visible in the sclera. Icterus is accompanied by pale stools and dark, frothy urine. Ecchymoses may be evident [139; 140; 141].

Laboratory and diagnostic studies assist in confirming the diagnosis. White blood cell levels, direct bilirubin levels, prothrombin time, alkaline phosphatase, and serum lipid levels will be elevated. Urine urobilinogen levels will decrease, but bilirubin will be found in the urine. Abdominal ultrasound and increased alkaline phosphatase (ALP) levels can help establish a diagnosis of cholelithiasis. Cholecystography, cholangiography, or endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) may be required [139; 140; 141].

**Therapeutic Measures**

If symptoms are mild, a low-fat diet may be sufficient to control them. The diet would be high in proteins and carbohydrates [144]. Depending on the patient's nutritional status, intravenous glucose and protein supplementation may be indicated. A nutritious diet promotes healing and helps prevent hepatic damage. Vitamin K may be required if coagulation abnormalities are demonstrated [145].

For acute attacks, treatment often includes medications such as butylscopolamine, fentanyl, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). For patients at risk for the development or exacerbation of cholelithiasis, oral ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) is recommended for prophylaxis [146].

There are a variety of options for minimally invasive management. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL) and oral chemical dissolution therapy were previously used, but both have largely been replaced in recent years. Both techniques are rarely used in clinical practice in recent years.

Today, many patients with recurrent and/or severe disease undergo ERCP with or without stent placement. If surgical Management is indicated, the preferred approach is laparoscopic cholecystectomy [146].

**Specific Nursing Measures**

In addition to comfort measures and administering analgesics and other prescribed medications, nurses can consult with the dietitian and the patient to work out a palatable low-fat diet. The patient may find a list of preferred, appropriate foods useful [59].

---

**LIVER TRANSPLANTATION**

---

Liver transplantation, one of the most common types of solid organ transplant, is the replacement of the diseased liver by an allograft from a brain-dead donor or a partial replacement of the liver by a living related donor. Dr. T.E. Starzl and associates at the University of Colorado pioneered this treatment modality in the early 1960s. By the end of the decade, surgeons in Pennsylvania and England were performing the procedure. By the beginning of the 21st century, liver transplantation had been performed at dozens of medical centers in the United States, Canada, and Western Europe. Although survival rates in the early programs were only 30%, improvements in technique and timing of the transplant have now brought the one-year survival rate to approximately 90% and the five-year survival rate to approximately 75% [147].

Children and adults who have irreversible liver disease or defects that cannot be overcome or managed by medical options are candidates for liver transplants. In children, the most common reasons for liver transplantation include biliary atresia, neonatal hepatitis, congenital hepatic fibrosis, alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency, and disorders of metabolism that result in inappropriate storage within the liver or significant liver damage from the buildup of metabolites. The most common diseases necessitating liver transplantation in adults are chronic viral hepatitis (HCV in the United States, HBV in Europe), biliary cirrhosis, alcoholic cirrhosis, sclerosing cholangitis, cryptogenic cirrhosis, Caroli disease, primary hepatocellular malignancies, hepatic adenomas, and hepatic vein thrombosis [148; 149]. Biliary atresia remains a common indication for liver transplantation in pediatric patients [150].

The Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) is a prognostic system that is now widely accepted as a tool for predicting survival of patients with cirrhosis. MELD, in conjunction with international normalized ratio, serum creatinine, serum bilirubin, and sodium, has been evaluated as a prognostic indicator for cirrhosis regardless of cause. Transplant centers utilize the MELD score in prioritizing clients for transplant [147; 151]. The Pediatric End-Stage Liver Disease (PELD) is used for children younger than 12 years of age [147].

Though patients may have a disease process that is an indication for liver transplant, the presence of compounding factors may provide a contraindication for the therapy. At one time, HIV disease was considered a contraindication for liver transplant. While patients with advanced HIV disease are not transplant candidates, HIV disease that is in an early stage or is controlled by antiretroviral therapy is no longer a contraindication for transplantation therapy. Similarly, persons older than 60 years of age were at one time excluded from this therapy, but persons older than 60 years of age who are healthy other than their liver disease can now be considered for candidacy. Active drug or alcohol use, metastatic cancer, uncontrolled bacterial or fungal infections, advanced cardiac or lung disease, and uncorrectable life-threatening congenital anomalies remain contraindications for liver transplantation.

Relative contraindications for liver transplantation are those factors that in isolation would not preclude a patient from receiving a transplant but in combination might decrease the probability that the patient would be approved. Examples of relative contraindications include chronic HBV with rapidly replicating virus, significant psychiatric disorder that may interfere with the patient's ability to follow the post-transplant regimen, significant renal disease not associated with the hepatic disease, and previous hepatic or biliary surgery [149].

Historically, donor organs have been obtained from cadavers. In 1998, the use of living related donors became an option in certain cases [152; 153]. Partial liver transplantation from living related donors results in a 20% morbidity rate for the donor. Therefore, cadaveric transplant remains the procedure of choice. The following discussion addresses only cadaveric transplants.

In 2020, the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network implemented a new liver distribution system called the acuity circle policy, which emphasizes the medical urgency of liver transplant candidates and the distance between the donor and transplant hospitals. The new system replaces the use of decades-old geographic boundaries of 58 donation service areas and 11 transplant regions [154]. Under the new policy, livers from all deceased donors will first be offered to the most urgent liver transplant candidates listed at transplant hospitals within a radius of 500 nautical miles of the donor hospital. Following offers to the most urgent candidates, livers from adult donors will be offered to candidates at hospitals within distances of 150, 250, and 500 nautical miles of the donor hospital. These offers are grouped by medical urgency [147].

Donor livers are usually obtained from brain-dead persons younger than 60 years of age who are free from bloodborne pathogen infections (HCV, HBV, HIV), are not septic, have no existing liver disease, and have not recently experienced abdominal trauma. Some centers consider the use of livers from HBV- or HCV-infected donors for recipients infected with

the same strain or subspecies of virus [155]. When donor livers are infected but not yet showing signs of cirrhosis, preliminary results indicate that recipient outcomes are not significantly different from those receiving uninfected livers.

Donor and recipient should have compatible body size and A, B, O blood groups. Unlike kidney transplants, however, donor and recipient do not have to have matching tissue types. The liver is viable for up to 20 hours after removal from the donor, but most centers prefer for the transplant surgery to be completed within 12 hours after organ harvest.

Liver transplantation surgery typically requires a procedure of 6 to 12 hours in duration; in more complex circumstances, the surgery has lasted up to 18 hours. During the procedure, the patient is at risk for coagulopathies, electrolyte disturbances, hypoglycemia, and a large volume of blood loss.

Various combinations of immunosuppressive drugs (monoclonal and polyclonal antibodies) have been used to reduce the probability of post-transplant rejection. It is desirable to try to prevent or minimize the adverse effects of these drugs, including infections, malignancy, and general drug toxicity. In the immediate post-transplant period, a common drug regimen includes a combination of a monoclonal antibody, mycophenolate mofetil, corticosteroids, and a calcineurin inhibitor such as cyclosporine or tacrolimus [148]. According to Hanto, the addition of an anti-IL-2 receptor monoclonal antibody (basiliximab or daclizumab) can result in a decrease in rejection rate from 43.5% to 35.1% [156]. Sirolimus is a newer drug that appears to be useful, especially in patients with renal insufficiency.

Chronic suppressive therapy is usually accomplished with tacrolimus and mycophenolate mofetil. Steroids are weaned within a few weeks of transplantation, except in the presence of autoimmune hepatitis. Liver transplant recipients require lower doses of immunosuppressive therapy than patients receiving other solid organ transplants. Nevertheless, providers should be attentive to drug-drug interactions and therapeutic monitoring of these medications [157].

The process of rejection is insidious in the majority of liver transplantation cases; hyperacute rejection rarely occurs. Most episodes of acute rejection occur within the first six months after the transplant (usually between three and six months) but can be reversed with steroids. In approximately 10% to 20% of patients, steroid resistance occurs, requiring treatment with a monoclonal antibody, such as muromonab-CD3, or a polyclonal antibody, such as thymoglobulin [156]. Acute rejection episodes seldom threaten graft survival. Patient survival rates are 84% with living-donor grafts and 83% with deceased-donor grafts at one year and 34% with living-donor grafts and 46% with deceased-donor grafts at five years [157].



---

## CONCLUSION

---

With knowledge of hepatic and biliary structure and function and the dynamic pathology that intrudes and impedes normal function, nurses are better able to provide quality and often life-saving actions. An awareness of why symptoms appear leads to quicker reporting of changes in the patient's condition. Nurses should also be prepared to perform immediate interventions based on standing orders and the recognition of what needs to be done in order to provide safe, quality care. This knowledge changes what could be only technical care to professional care through use of decision making skills built upon the knowledge of pathophysiology.

---

## CASE STUDIES

---

### CASE ONE: ESOPHAGEAL VARICES

#### Present Illness

Patient A is a man, 60 years of age, who is admitted to the hospital for treatment of acute gastrointestinal bleeding. The patient had a similar episode five weeks ago. An upper endoscopic exam at that time revealed a bleeding esophageal varix for which he received band ligation therapy. He is well-known to the medical community for chronic alcohol use. He has lost several jobs for drinking in the workplace or showing up for work drunk. He has lost his driver's license for drunk driving, and his drinking has placed a significant strain on his marriage. He and his wife are currently separated. He has tried several self-help programs to stop drinking as well as Alcoholics Anonymous, all with little success.

#### Medical History

Patient A has been hospitalized five times during the previous 30 months. Most recently, he was discharged five weeks ago following treatment for bleeding esophageal varices. He has a 44-year history of cigarette smoking (one pack per day), was diagnosed five years ago with alcoholic cirrhosis, and currently drinks an unknown amount of liquor daily. He previously reported drinking 6 to 12 beers per day for many years.

On previous admissions, Patient A has been treated for acute pancreatitis twice, alcohol withdrawal seizures, delirium tremens, ascites, coagulopathy, esophageal varices, peptic ulcer disease, anemia, and gastritis, all of which were determined to be related to his alcohol use. Medications at last discharge included:

- Lactulose (30 mL four times per day)
- Spironolactone (100 mg per day)
- Furosemide (80 mg per day)
- Propranolol (30 mg per day)
- Famotidine (40 mg twice per day)

#### Assessment and Diagnosis

Patient A was found unconscious and face down in a pool of bright red, bloody vomitus by his neighbor. He is resuscitated and taken to the hospital by ambulance and is admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU). Upon admittance to the ICU, a full physical exam is conducted (**Table 1**) and laboratory blood testing is ordered (**Table 2**). Intravenous infusion with a solution of D5W and colloid is started through a central line. Oxygen is started at 3 L/min. Octreotide is administered to help stop the bleeding. An echocardiogram is conducted.

Based on the results of the assessment, Patient A is diagnosed with acute alcohol-related pancreatitis.

#### Study Questions

1. Explain the pathophysiology of each of the following clinical manifestations in this patient.
  - a. Spider angiomas
  - b. Splenomegaly
  - c. Edema
  - d. Jaundice and icteric sclera
2. Why has the primary care provider noted the absence of asterixis?
3. What is the significance of the renal test results?
4. What is the significance of the liver enzyme test results?
5. What are the pathophysiology and significance of the total and indirect bilirubin test results?
6. Is blood clotting a concern at this time in this patient?
7. Why might hemoglobin concentration and hematocrit be abnormal?
8. Does this patient have an arterial blood gas problem?
9. Give a reasonable explanation for the pathophysiology of the patient's blood glucose concentration.
10. What evidence is provided that this episode is not associated with another attack of alcohol-induced acute pancreatitis?
11. What is the purpose of prescribing lactulose for patients with chronic liver disease?
12. Why are diuretics appropriate for patients with chronic hepatic disease?

### CASE STUDY TWO: CIRRHOSIS

#### Present Illness

Patient B is a woman, 48 years of age, who presents to the emergency department complaining of a four-week history of progressive abdominal swelling and discomfort. She has no other gastrointestinal symptoms and has a normal appetite and normal bowel habits. Her past medical history is significant only for three pregnancies, one of which was complicated by hemorrhage, requiring a blood transfusion. She has been married for 20 years, exercises, does not smoke, and drinks only occasionally. On pointed questioning, she admits that she was

PATIENT A'S PHYSICAL EXAM RESULTS	
Parameter	Findings
General appearance	Thin, unkempt White man Height: 5 feet 10 inches (177.8 cm) Weight: 151 pounds (68.5 kg)
Skin	Markedly jaundiced Spider angiomas evident on arms Normal turgor No palmar erythema
Head and eyes	Icteric sclera Pupils are equal, round, and reactive to light and accommodation Extra-ocular motion intact Oropharynx dry, with no erythema or lesions present
Ears	Tympanic membranes intact
Neck	Supple with no nodules Negative for jugular vein distention, thyromegaly, and lymphadenopathy
Chest	Good air exchange bilaterally
Abdomen	Soft, with mild distension and hyperactive bowel sounds Splenomegaly Negative for guarding or rebound tenderness
Extremities	Warm with mild (1+) edema Pulses symmetric at 2+ Muscle tone normal Full range of motion throughout
Genitourinary system	Normal male Stool positive for heme
Neurologic status	Alert and oriented Slow to answer questions Cranial nerves II–XII intact Deep tendon reflexes brisk and equal bilaterally
Cardiovascular system	Tachycardia with normal rhythm Normal S1 and S2 with no additional heart sounds No murmurs or rubs heard Normal sinus rhythm
<b>Vital Signs</b>	
Blood pressure	90/60 mm Hg
Temperature	98.0° F
Heart rate	112 bpm with regular irregular rhythm
Respiratory rate	14 breaths per minute
<i>Source: Author</i>	

Table 1

“wild” in her youth and did use cocaine once or twice at parties many years ago. She does not currently use illicit drugs. She tested HIV-negative at the time of the birth of her last child.

On examination, her temperature is 100.3 degrees F, her heart rate is 88 bpm, and her blood pressure is 94/60 mm Hg. She is thin, her complexion is sallow, her sclerae are icteric, her chest is clear, and her heart is regular with no murmur.

Her abdomen is distended and with mild diffuse tenderness, hypoactive bowel sounds, shifting dullness to percussion, and a fluid wave. She has no peripheral edema. Laboratory studies are normal except for the following:

- Sodium: 120 mEq/L
- Albumin: 2.8 mg/dL

PATIENT A LABORATORY BLOOD TEST RESULTS	
Test	Result
Blood type	B+
Sodium	135 meq/L
Potassium	4.6 meq/L
Chloride	103 meq/L
Bicarbonate	22 meq/L
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	10 mg/dL
Creatinine	1.1 mg/dL
Fasting blood glucose	140 mg/dL
Hemoglobin	9.4 g/dL
International normalized ratio (INR)	2.3
Hematocrit	28%
White blood cell count	10,000/mm <sup>3</sup>
Platelets	160,000/mm <sup>3</sup>
Total bilirubin	10.4 mg/dL
Indirect bilirubin	9.9 mg/dL
Amylase	43 IU/L
PaO <sub>2</sub>	85 mm Hg
PaCO <sub>2</sub>	245 mm Hg
pH	7.38
NH <sub>3</sub>	59 mcg/dL
Prothrombin time (PT)	23 seconds
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT)	54 seconds
Aspartate transaminase (AST)	119 IU/L
Alanine transaminase (ALT)	94 IU/L
Total protein	4.9 g/dL
Albumin	2.9 g/dL
Calcium	8.9 mg/dL
Phosphorus	2.8 mg/dL
HIV RNA	Negative
Source: Author	Table 2

- Total bilirubin: 4 mg/dL
- Prothrombin time: 15 seconds
- Hemoglobin: 12 g/dL, with a mean cell volume (MCV) of 102 fL
- Platelet count: 78,000/mm<sup>3</sup>

Patient B is diagnosed with ascites caused by portal hypertension as a complication of hepatic cirrhosis. Paracentesis is performed to evaluate the ascitic fluid to try to determine its likely etiology, as well as evaluate for the complication of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.

### CASE STUDY THREE: JAUNDICE

#### Present Illness

Patient C is a Black man, 33 years of age, who presents to the office for an acute visit with nausea and diarrhea that he has had for the past week. Along with these symptoms, he has had a low-grade fever, some right upper quadrant abdominal pain, and has noticed that his eyes seem yellow.

### Medical History

Patient C has no significant medical history and takes no medications regularly. He denies alcohol, tobacco, or IV drug use. He works as a pastor in a local church that went on a mission to build a medical clinic in a rural area of Central America about five weeks ago. While there, he had a mild case of diarrhea, but otherwise has felt well.

### Assessment and Diagnosis

On examination, Patient C is a well-developed man who appears to be moderately ill. His temperature is 99.8°F, his blood pressure is 110/80 mm Hg, his pulse is 90 beats/minute, and his respiratory rate is 14 breaths/minute. He has a prominent yellow color to his eyes and under his tongue. His mucous membranes are moist. Lung and cardiac examinations are normal. His abdomen has normal bowel sounds and tenderness in the right upper quadrant. His liver edge is palpable just below the costal margin. There are no other masses felt, no rebound, and no guarding. On rectal examination, he has clay-colored soft stool that is hemoccult negative.

Based on the examination and history, Patient C is diagnosed with jaundice, likely related to acute hepatitis A infection. Anti-hepatitis A IgM testing confirms infection. The most probable source of infection is ingestion of contaminated food or water while on his mission.

For this patient, treatment focuses on supportive care and palliation of symptoms. The infection is also reported to the local health department. Close household or sexual contacts are provided with hepatitis A prophylaxis.

### CASE STUDY FOUR: CHRONIC HEPATITIS C

Patient D is a paramedic, 48 years of age. Laboratory work obtained during his annual physical examination reveals hyperlipidemia; complete blood count, glucose, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and electrolytes are within normal range. With the exception of his weight (15 pounds heavier than indicated for his height), his exam identifies no abnormalities.

After two months of a diet and exercise program, his cholesterol level is 256. Therefore, his physician elects to begin a lipid-lowering agent. A baseline liver profile is drawn prior to initiation of the medication. Because the patient is in a profession that is high-risk for bloodborne pathogen exposure, an HCV antibody test with reflex to qualitative HCV RNA is ordered. The liver profile reveals an AST of 226 Units/L and an ALT of 282 Units/L. HCV antibody and reflex quantitative HCV RNA are both positive.

The physician reviews Patient D's history and medications. He has been a paramedic for 25 years. He was immunized against HBV in 1999. During his career, he has experienced several exposures to blood (usually blood splashes, but also two needlesticks from IV needles). His most recent exposure was two years ago. An HIV test six months post-exposure was negative. He does not recall hepatitis testing being performed at that time.

Patient D's surgical history includes a hernia repair in childhood and removal of skin lesions three times in the past eight years. He has had no transfusions. He is the widowed father of two teenage children. His wife died six years ago from ovarian cancer.

The patient has never smoked. He drinks about six beers per week and rarely drinks hard liquor. He denies any history of illicit drug use. Although the patient has no current prescription medications, he uses several herbal preparations including garlic, ginkgo, and an antioxidant preparation. The patient takes ibuprofen for pain, consuming 6 to 10 tablets (200 mg each) per month.

Although alcohol consumption and herbal antioxidants can both cause liver inflammation, the degree of his liver inflammation is much higher than would be expected from limited use of these two factors. The patient is diagnosed with chronic HCV infection.

In order to evaluate the extent of liver damage and determine an appropriate treatment plan, the physician orders an HCV RNA quantitative PCR and genotype as well as a repeat hepatic panel, platelet count, and PT. Shear wave elastography is also ordered. The laboratory results are:

- Platelets:  $237 \times 10^9/L$
- ALT: 253 Units/L
- AST: 214 Units/L
- PT INR: 1.0
- HCV RNA: 350,000 IU/L
- HCV genotype: 3

Based upon these laboratory results, the calculated Fib-4 score is 2.72. The elastography reflects a fibrosis score of F1. No masses are identified on ultrasound. Because the genotype of the virus is 3, resistance testing is ordered. Substitution mutation Y93H is not present.

Treatment options appropriate for HCV genotype 3, and the timing of therapy in relation to his degree of fibrosis and anticipated progression of disease are discussed with Patient D. He is advised to eat a nutritious, balanced diet and abstain completely from alcohol. Although he is not currently sexually active, the patient is educated about the low but present risk of sexual transmission of HCV and how to minimize the risk of transmission. A test for HAV antibody is found to be negative. Immunization against HAV is also recommended, as acquiring an acute case of HAV in a patient with pre-existing chronic hepatitis can be much more serious than either condition alone. He is also provided pneumococcal immunization, as persons with chronic liver disease are at increased risk of pneumococcal infection and complications. Because of uncertainty as to how recently he acquired the infection, the decision is made to defer treatment for three to four months while monitoring the course of the infection.

Four months after the initial diagnosis, there has been no improvement in Patient D's liver function tests: the ALT is 318 Units/L and AST is 287 Units/L. The HCV RNA remains detectable in the blood, and the viral load has increased to 450,000 phages/cc. He is advised to begin antiviral treatment; therapeutic options are discussed in relation to efficacy, potential drug interactions, and cost reimbursement priorities, bearing in mind that he is a treatment-naïve patient with no evidence of cirrhosis. The recommended course of therapy is the 12-week, two-drug oral regimen of sofosbuvir (400 mg) and velpatasvir (100 mg) for a duration of 12 weeks (reported SVR rate: 95% in clinical trials for genotype 3).

On treatment, the patient experiences transient nausea and persistent mild fatigue, but is compliant with the recommended duration of therapy. At 12 weeks, the ALT and AST are both within normal range and HCV RNA is undetectable. Patient D is asked to return in three months to continue his hyperlipidemia treatment follow-up.

### **CASE STUDY FIVE: PANCREATITIS-GALLSTONE-INDUCED**

#### **Present Illness**

Patient E is a Hispanic woman, 42 years of age, who presents to the emergency department complaining of 24 hours of severe, steady epigastric abdominal pain, radiating to her back, with several episodes of nausea and vomiting. She has had similar painful episodes in the past, usually in the evening following heavy meals, but they always resolved spontaneously within an hour or two. This time, the pain has not improved, so she is seeking medical attention.

#### **Medical History**

Patient E has no prior medical history and takes no medications. She is married, has three children, and does not drink alcohol or smoke cigarettes.

#### **Assessment and Diagnosis**

On examination, Patient E is afebrile. She is experiencing tachycardia, with a heart rate of 104 beats per minute. Her blood pressure is 115/17 mm Hg, and she has shallow respirations of 22 breaths per minute. She is moving uncomfortably on the stretcher, her skin is warm and diaphoretic, and she has scleral icterus. Her abdomen is soft and mildly distended, with marked right upper quadrant and epigastric tenderness to palpation, hypoactive bowel sounds, and no masses or organomegaly appreciated. Her stool is negative for occult blood. Laboratory studies are significant for:

- Total bilirubin: 9.2 g/dL, with a direct fraction of 4.8 g/dL
- Alkaline phosphatase: 285 IU/L
- Aspartate aminotransferase (AST): 78 IU/L
- Alanine aminotransferase (ALT): 92 IU/L
- Amylase: 1,249 IU/L (elevated)

- Leukocyte count: 16,500/mm<sup>3</sup>, with 82% polymorphnuclear cells and 16% lymphocytes

Right upper quadrant abdominal ultrasonography shows a distended gallbladder, with several stones.

Based on the assessment, Patient E is diagnosed with acute pancreatitis resulting from choledocolithiasis. The patient is started on systemic antibiotics and prepared for removal of the stones.

### **CASE STUDY SIX: HIV AND CHRONIC HBV COINFECTION**

Patient C is a man, 32 years of age, with a history of injection drug use, who participated in a free HIV testing day. His screening test was found to be positive. A confirmatory test conducted at the health department was also positive. He has therefore been referred to the Infectious Disease Clinic of a large university medical center for follow up.

During his first visit, the patient indicates that he injected drugs off and on beginning at 19 years of age. His first two experiences with rehabilitation failed, but he has been "clean" for two years, since his best friend died of an overdose. He reports that he also snorted cocaine occasionally during the years he used injected drugs.

The patient's medical history includes a hospitalization for a motorcycle accident at age 24, with surgery on his right leg both on that admission and again about a year later. He received 2 units of blood during the first admission. The patient denies a history of heart disease, neurologic disorders, or endocrine disorders. He has had pneumonia both in adolescence and again last year.

The patient's parents are living and in good health. Grandparents all have hypertension, and maternal grandmother has type 2 diabetes. The patient smokes 1/2 to 1 pack of cigarettes per day and consumes two or three drinks per day. The patient's current medications include acetaminophen or ibuprofen as needed for leg pain and paroxetine for anxiety and depression.

Physical examination reveals no acute distress. Vital signs are within normal limits, and sclerae are non-icteric. Oral cavity is free from thrush and leukoplakia. Cervical lymph nodes are palpable but moveable and nontender. Heart sounds are normal; lungs are clear. Abdomen is soft; both liver and spleen are palpable. Neurologic exam is normal. The patient has full function in upper extremities and left leg; right leg has a slight decrease in strength and a moderate decrease in range of motion.

Initial laboratory tests ordered by the nurse practitioner (NP) include an HIV PCR viral load, a CD4 count, a CBC, a chemistry panel, and a liver profile. Because of the high incidence of HCV and/or HBV coinfection in persons whose HIV was acquired percutaneously, the NP also orders a hepatitis profile. Baseline tuberculosis testing is also recommended for persons with HIV who are entering care. Therefore, a T-SPOT

interferon gamma release assay is also ordered. The patient is instructed to return in 72 hours to review lab results and formulate a treatment plan.

Upon his return, all results except the HIV PCR are available. His CD4 count is 246. Hematocrit is 44%, hemoglobin 15 gm/dL, and WBC is 3,800. The liver profile reveals an alkaline phosphatase of 143 Units/mL, AST 358 Units/L, ALT 383 Units/L, total bilirubin 1.2 mg/dL, and albumin 2.8 gm/dL. The remainder of the chemistry panel is unremarkable. Hepatitis profile is positive for HBsAg, HBeAg, and total anti-HBc. The anti-HAV, anti-HCV and anti-HBc IgM are negative. The T-SPOT TB test is negative.

The NP informs Patient C that he is coinfecting with HIV and HBV and instructs him about the problems associated with HIV/HBV coinfection. He is given HAV and pneumococcal immunizations and options for antiretroviral therapy are discussed. Because of its effectiveness against both HIV and HBV, a medication regimen including tenofovir with lamivudine or tenofovir with emtricitabine should be utilized. A third medication for HIV viral suppression should be added, with consideration of the hepatotoxicity profile of the medication. After discussing available options with limited hepatotoxicity, an integrase inhibitor is selected as the third active agent in the combination. A single tablet medication containing bictegravir, emtricitabine, and tenofovir alafenamide in a once daily formulation was therefore selected to treat both HIV and HBV.

Information is provided to Patient C regarding safe sex practices. He is also instructed to abstain from alcohol and to use ibuprofen (or no more than 2 g acetaminophen in 24 hours) for pain control. The NP also orders a PT to be drawn; in addition, the patient is referred to hepatology for a liver biopsy

to be performed in order to evaluate the progression of the liver disease. The patient is scheduled for a follow-up visit in four weeks, with a repeat HIV PCR performed at that time. In the interim, his baseline HIV PCR is found to be 123,000.

Upon his return to the office, Patient C is advised that the liver biopsy revealed periportal inflammation with focal necrosis and bridging fibrosis. PT is 15.6 seconds (control: 12 seconds). These findings indicate severe, advanced liver disease and the guarded prognosis. Because of the severity of his liver disease, he is not a good candidate for PegIFN therapy. The patient's current HIV status precludes his being a transplant candidate at the time. The recommended treatment plan for Patient C is to maximize his HIV suppression while minimizing his continued liver damage. If he is compliant with his therapy, he should be able to maintain a fairly good quality of life and postpone liver failure for three years or more. Prolonging the time until liver failure also provides the opportunity to improve immunocompetency. Some liver transplant centers now accept HIV-positive patients, provided that HIV viral loads are undetectable and CD4 counts are sufficiently high (usually >500). Patient C's future, therefore, depends upon his tolerance of the regimen, his compliance with the treatment plan, and his body's response to therapy.

The patient will initially be followed on a monthly basis. The viral load will be checked one month after the initiation of therapy, then every three months thereafter. Liver profile, CBC, and amylase will be assessed after one month, then bimonthly. After three months, HIV and HBV quantitative PCRs will be measured. If both are well suppressed, follow-up will be extended to every two to three months. If the patient's liver function significantly deteriorates, supportive therapy for end-stage liver disease will be instituted.

Customer Information and Evaluation are located on pages 119–120.

SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

#38910 PATHOPHYSIOLOGY: THE HEPATOBILIARY SYSTEM

After reviewing the course, complete the following Self-Assessment Questions. Receive immediate feedback by reviewing the Study Guide provided on pages 113–115. Please record the number of questions you correctly answered on the Evaluation. The Evaluation must be completed in order to receive credit for this course.

This 15 contact hour activity must be completed by July 31, 2027.

1. What is the primary function of the gallbladder?
  - A) Storage and release of bile
  - B) Storage and filtration of blood
  - C) Storage of vitamins A, D, and B12
  - D) Metabolism of carbohydrates, fats, and protein
2. Which of the following statements regarding bilirubin is TRUE?
  - A) As blood passes through the liver, unconjugated bilirubin is added.
  - B) Conjugated bilirubin is less soluble and more toxic than unconjugated bilirubin.
  - C) Conjugated bilirubin is continually present in the bloodstream in small quantities.
  - D) In the intestines, conjugated bilirubin is converted into a highly soluble substance called urobilinogen.
3. The liver is capable of storing up to a 10-year supply of
  - A) vitamin A.
  - B) vitamin D.
  - C) vitamin B12.
  - D) vitamin K.
4. Which of the following statements accurately describes the liver's response to persistent pathogenic influences?
  - A) Hepatomegaly due to persistent pathogenic influences is unrelated to fibrosis or impaired blood flow from the hepatic veins.
  - B) The liver can regenerate normally after an acute condition, but persistent pathogenic influences will always lead to a complete restoration of normal liver function.
  - C) Under normal circumstances, the liver will regenerate by replacing damaged cells with neoplastic tissue, leading to reduced liver size and minimal discomfort.
  - D) Persistent pathogenic influences result in the liver replacing dead or diseased cells with fibrous tissue, causing hepatomegaly and potentially impeding blood flow from the hepatic veins.
5. What is a consequence of liver injury that involves damage to Kupffer cells?
  - A) Enhanced phagocytosis
  - B) Increased production of lymphocytes
  - C) Decreased circulation of micro-organisms
  - D) Impaired phagocytosis and increased susceptibility to infection
6. What is a potential consequence of diminished detoxification capacity in a compromised liver?
  - A) Enhanced production of albumin
  - B) Decreased retention of sodium and water
  - C) Increased detoxification of alcohol and drugs
  - D) Increased levels of circulating aldosterone and ADH
7. Xanthomas and xanthelasmas are most commonly seen on the
  - A) face.
  - B) trunk.
  - C) hands and around the eyes.
  - D) extremities, especially the feet and toes.
8. What is a factor that increases the risk of developing cholelithiasis (gallstones) in women?
  - A) Increased number of pregnancies
  - B) Lower cholesterol saturation of bile
  - C) Decreased action of estrogen and progesterone
  - D) Decreased cholesterol saturation of bile due to estrogen and progesterone
9. What is a special risk for healthcare professionals regarding exposure to hepatitis?
  - A) Limited contact with body fluids
  - B) Minimal risk in laboratory settings
  - C) Strict adherence to asepsis and isolation principles
  - D) Exposure to virus-contaminated blood or secretions

Self-Assessment questions continue on next page →

10. Which of the following groups of healthcare professionals are at particular risk of exposure to hepatitis due to their work environment?
- A) Radiologists
  - B) Physical therapists
  - C) Administrative staff
  - D) Laboratory and operating room personnel
11. Which of the following symptoms might suggest the development of hepatitis or hepatic cancer?
- A) Increased appetite and weight gain
  - B) High energy levels and improved mood
  - C) Loss of weight or loss of interest in food
  - D) Enhanced blood clotting and reduced bruising
12. Which of the following physical findings is suggestive of cirrhosis?
- A) Hirsutism
  - B) Ecchymosis
  - C) Muscle bulking
  - D) Atrophied periumbilical veins
13. Which of the following values are likely to be elevated with liver or gallbladder disease?
- A) Alkaline phosphatase
  - B) Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)
  - C) Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)
  - D) All of the above
14. Which of the following statements is true regarding dye clearance studies for liver function?
- A) The patient can eat normally before the test.
  - B) Blood is drawn immediately after dye injection.
  - C) The indocyanine green (ICG) clearance test is rarely used.
  - D) The presence of more than 5% of dye in the serum indicates liver cell damage.
15. Which of the following statements is true regarding endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) studies?
- A) ERCP is performed using a colonoscope.
  - B) No antibiotics are needed during the procedure.
  - C) ERCP is safe for all patients, including combative ones.
  - D) The duodenum is immobilized using intravenously administered secretin.
16. Which of the following is a key nursing responsibility before a liver biopsy procedure?
- A) Ensuring the patient remains NPO after midnight.
  - B) Allowing the patient to eat a light meal before the procedure.
  - C) Encouraging the patient to perform light exercise before the procedure.
  - D) Administering a sedative to the patient without checking coagulation studies.
17. Which of the following dietary recommendations is most appropriate for a patient with hepatic dysfunction in the absence of ammonia toxicity?
- A) A low-carbohydrate diet to prevent weight gain
  - B) A diet high in fats and proteins to support muscle mass
  - C) A balanced diet high in carbohydrates, vitamins, and proteins
  - D) A diet high in fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K to compensate for deficiencies
18. Which of the following is considered first-line management for pain associated with cholelithiasis?
- A) NSAIDs
  - B) Morphine
  - C) Nitroglycerin
  - D) Antispasmodics
19. Which of the following therapeutic measures is used to decrease serum ammonia levels in patients with hepatic encephalopathy?
- A) Potassium supplementation to improve cerebral metabolism of ammonia.
  - B) Intravenous administration of glucose to provide protein-conserving carbohydrates.
  - C) Oral or enema administration of neomycin to reduce ammonia-synthesizing bacteria in the gut.
  - D) All of the above
20. Which of the following is an expected outcome related to correction of fluid volume?
- A) Decreased skin turgor
  - B) Appropriate intake and output
  - C) Rapid correction of hypertension
  - D) Increased circumference of abdominal girth



21. Which of the following is among the major clinical manifestations of Alagille syndrome?
- A) Anxiety
  - B) Cholestasis
  - C) Normal liver function studies
  - D) Bile duct abundance on liver biopsy
22. Which of the following is a common cause of cirrhosis in developed countries?
- A) Malaria
  - B) Tuberculosis
  - C) Hepatitis A infection
  - D) Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease
23. Which of the following statements is true regarding the control of hemorrhage from esophageal varices?
- A) Portal-systemic shunting is the only method required to manage bleeding from esophageal varices, with no need for medication or blood infusion.
  - B) Hemorrhage from esophageal varices is best controlled by the administration of antibiotics alone, with no need for vasoconstrictor medications or blood transfusions.
  - C) Infusions of medications such as vasopressin, somatostatin, or octreotide provide long-term control of variceal hemorrhage and are not associated with any significant complications.
  - D) Temporary control of hemorrhage from esophageal varices can be achieved by infusions of vasopressin, somatostatin, octreotide, or terlipressin to induce arterial vasoconstriction and lower portal pressure.
24. What is the high end of the range for the amount of alcohol required to produce chronic liver disease over 10 to 12 years?
- A) 40 g/day
  - B) 60 g/day
  - C) 80 g/day
  - D) 100 g/day
25. What is the end result of repeated bouts of drinking-related liver injury, designating the onset of end-stage alcoholic liver disease?
- A) Hepatic steatosis
  - B) Alcoholic cirrhosis
  - C) Alcoholic hepatitis
  - D) Portal hypertension
26. Which of the following statements accurately describes metabolic dysfunction-associated steatotic liver disease (MASLD)?
- A) MASLD reflects a range of liver conditions caused by metabolic dysfunction.
  - B) The condition has no association with rapid weight loss, parenteral nutrition, or surgical procedures such as jejunioileal bypass.
  - C) MASLD is a rare form of liver disease that primarily results from excessive alcohol consumption and is unrelated to metabolic dysfunction or obesity.
  - D) MASLD, formerly known as nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), is a condition characterized solely by fatty liver infiltration and is not associated with any other health conditions.
27. What is the primary aim of treatment for MASLD?
- A) To rapidly cure the disease
  - B) To eliminate the need for liver transplantation
  - C) To increase alcohol consumption for better liver function
  - D) To slow progression of the disease and prevent liver-related illness
28. What are the earliest symptoms of primary biliary cholangitis?
- A) Jaundice and liver failure
  - B) Dark urine and pale stools
  - C) Unexplained pruritus, weight loss, and fatigue
  - D) Osteoporosis and elevated serum alkaline phosphatase levels
29. Phenylbutazone and the sulfonamides can produce
- A) hepatitis.
  - B) cholestasis.
  - C) granulomas within the liver.
  - D) intrahepatic cholestasis with jaundice.
30. What is a hepatic abscess?
- A) A benign tumor in the liver
  - B) A non-infectious inflammation of the liver
  - C) A type of liver cancer caused by viral infection
  - D) An invasion of the liver by micro-organisms producing a localized collection of pus

Self-Assessment questions continue on next page →

31. What is the primary mode of transmission for hepatitis A?
- A) Fecal-oral route
  - B) Airborne droplets
  - C) Blood transfusion
  - D) Direct skin contact
32. What is the recommended vaccination schedule for the combination hepatitis A and B vaccine Twinrix?
- A) A single dose of 1 mL intramuscularly
  - B) Two doses of 1 mL intramuscularly, one month apart
  - C) Three doses of 1 mL intramuscularly, with boosters at one and six months
  - D) Four doses of 0.5 mL intramuscularly, with boosters at one, three, and six months
33. What is the typical incubation period for hepatitis B virus?
- A) 15 to 30 days
  - B) 30 to 45 days
  - C) 45 to 180 days
  - D) 180 to 365 days
34. What is the primary recommendation for treating patients with chronic hepatitis C infection according to the IDSA/AASLD 2023 guidelines?
- A) Treatment is recommended only for patients with cirrhosis.
  - B) Treatment is recommended only for patients with advanced liver disease.
  - C) Treatment is recommended only for patients who have not previously been treated for HCV.
  - D) Treatment is recommended for all patients, except those with a short life expectancy that cannot be remediated.
35. What characterizes type 1 autoimmune hepatitis?
- A) Predominantly affects men
  - B) Increased levels of anti-mitochondrial antibodies
  - C) Susceptibility resides mainly with the HLA-DQ2 gene
  - D) Increased levels of anti-smooth muscle and antinuclear autoantibodies
36. Which of the following is a known etiologic agent in liver cancer?
- A) Smoking
  - B) Cirrhosis
  - C) Chronic viral hepatitis
  - D) All of the above
37. Which of the following statements best describes the management and treatment options for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)?
- A) Best survival rates are achieved when the HCC can be removed either by surgical resection or liver transplant.
  - B) There are comprehensive studies showing that ablation is superior to surgical resection and liver transplant for early-stage HCC.
  - C) Surgical resection is the only effective treatment for early-stage HCC, and liver transplant is only considered if surgical resection is not feasible.
  - D) Randomized studies have robustly compared the effectiveness of surgical resection, liver transplant, and ablation for early-stage HCC, showing that liver transplant is universally preferred.
38. What are the primary risk factors associated with intrahepatic bile duct cancer (cholangiocarcinoma)?
- A) Alcohol use disorder
  - B) Hepatitis B and C infections
  - C) Obesity and type 2 diabetes mellitus
  - D) Chronic inflammation and injury of the bile duct epithelium
39. What is the most common symptom of cholelithiasis?
- A) Colicky pain
  - B) Chronic diarrhea
  - C) Persistent nausea and vomiting
  - D) Constant dull ache in the lower abdomen
40. Following liver transplantation, what is a common drug regimen used in the immediate post-transplant period to reduce the probability of rejection?
- A) Calcineurin inhibitor, digoxin, corticosteroids, and a diuretic
  - B) Monoclonal antibody, aspirin, corticosteroids, and a beta blocker
  - C) Mycophenolate mofetil, vitamin D, corticosteroids, and a calcium channel blocker
  - D) Monoclonal antibody, mycophenolate mofetil, corticosteroids, and a calcineurin inhibitor

# STUDY GUIDE

## COURSE #38910 PATHOPHYSIOLOGY: THE HEPATOBILIARY SYSTEM

This Study Guide has been included to provide immediate feedback about your achievement for the course learning objectives. The correct answers for the Self-Assessment Questions and their locations within the text are indicated below.

- 1. What is the primary function of the gallbladder?**  
A) Storage and release of bile (Structural and Functional Inter-Relationships)
- 2. Which of the following statements regarding bilirubin is TRUE?**  
D) In the intestines, conjugated bilirubin is converted into a highly soluble substance called urobilinogen. (Structural and Functional Inter-Relationships; Functions of the Liver; Excretory Functions)
- 3. The liver is capable of storing up to a 10-year supply of**  
A) vitamin A. (Structural and Functional Inter-Relationships; Functions of the Liver; Storage Functions; Vitamin Storage)
- 4. Which of the following statements accurately describes the liver's response to persistent pathogenic influences?**  
D) Persistent pathogenic influences result in the liver replacing dead or diseased cells with fibrous tissue, causing hepatomegaly and potentially impeding blood flow from the hepatic veins. (Pathophysiologic Influences and Effects; Enlargement of the Liver)
- 5. What is a consequence of liver injury that involves damage to Kupffer cells?**  
D) Impaired phagocytosis and increased susceptibility to infection (Pathophysiologic Influences and Effects; Increased Susceptibility to Infection)
- 6. What is a potential consequence of diminished detoxification capacity in a compromised liver?**  
D) Increased levels of circulating aldosterone and ADH (Pathophysiologic Influences and Effects; Impairment of Detoxification)
- 7. Xanthomas and xanthelasmas are most commonly seen on the**  
C) hands and around the eyes. (Related Systems Influences and Effects; Integumentary System)
- 8. What is a factor that increases the risk of developing cholelithiasis (gallstones) in women?**  
A) Increased number of pregnancies (Psychosocial/Lifestyle Influences and Effects; Sex and Age)
- 9. What is a special risk for healthcare professionals regarding exposure to hepatitis?**  
D) Exposure to virus-contaminated blood or secretions (Psychosocial/Lifestyle Influences and Effects; Occupation and Avocation)
- 10. Which of the following groups of healthcare professionals are at particular risk of exposure to hepatitis due to their work environment?**  
D) Laboratory and operating room personnel (Psychosocial/Lifestyle Influences and Effects; Occupation and Avocation)
- 11. Which of the following symptoms might suggest the development of hepatitis or hepatic cancer?**  
C) Loss of weight or loss of interest in food (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Subjective Data)
- 12. Which of the following physical findings is suggestive of cirrhosis?**  
B) Ecchymosis (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Objective Data; Physical Assessment)
- 13. Which of the following values are likely to be elevated with liver or gallbladder disease?**  
D) All of the above (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Diagnostic Studies; Serum Enzyme Studies)

14. Which of the following statements is true regarding dye clearance studies for liver function?  
D) The presence of more than 5% of dye in the serum indicates liver cell damage. (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Diagnostic Studies; Dye Clearance Studies)
15. Which of the following statements is true regarding endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) studies?  
D) The duodenum is immobilized using intravenously administered secretin. (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Diagnostic Studies; Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography (ERCP))
16. Which of the following is a key nursing responsibility before a liver biopsy procedure?  
A) Ensuring the patient remains NPO after midnight. (Nursing Assessment: Establishing the Data Base; Diagnostic Studies; Liver Biopsy)
17. Which of the following dietary recommendations is most appropriate for a patient with hepatic dysfunction in the absence of ammonia toxicity?  
C) A balanced diet high in carbohydrates, vitamins, and proteins (Nursing Diagnoses; Alteration in Nutrition)
18. Which of the following is considered first-line management for pain associated with cholelithiasis?  
A) NSAIDs (Nurse Planning and Implementation; Pain Relief)
19. Which of the following therapeutic measures is used to decrease serum ammonia levels in patients with hepatic encephalopathy?  
D) All of the above (Nurse Planning and Implementation; Reducing Ammonia Levels)
20. Which of the following is an expected outcome related to correction of fluid volume?  
B) Appropriate intake and output (Nursing Evaluation; Fluid Volume)
21. Which of the following is among the major clinical manifestations of Alagille syndrome?  
B) Cholestasis (Congenital Disorders; Alagille Syndrome)
22. Which of the following is a common cause of cirrhosis in developed countries?  
D) Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Cirrhosis)
23. Which of the following statements is true regarding the control of hemorrhage from esophageal varices?  
D) Temporary control of hemorrhage from esophageal varices can be achieved by infusions of vasopressin, somatostatin, octreotide, or terlipressin to induce arterial vasoconstriction and lower portal pressure. (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Cirrhosis; Therapeutic Measures)
24. What is the high end of the range for the amount of alcohol required to produce chronic liver disease over 10 to 12 years?  
C) 80 g/day (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Alcohol-Induced Liver Disease; Portal Cirrhosis)
25. What is the end result of repeated bouts of drinking-related liver injury, designating the onset of end-stage alcoholic liver disease?  
B) Alcoholic cirrhosis (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Alcohol-Induced Liver Disease; Alcoholic Cirrhosis)
26. Which of the following statements accurately describes metabolic dysfunction-associated steatotic liver disease (MASLD)?  
A) MASLD reflects a range of liver conditions caused by metabolic dysfunction. (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Metabolic Dysfunction-Associated Steatotic Liver Disease (MASLD))
27. What is the primary aim of treatment for MASLD?  
D) To slow progression of the disease and prevent liver-related illness (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Metabolic Dysfunction-Associated Steatotic Liver Disease (MASLD); Treatment)

28. **What are the earliest symptoms of primary biliary cholangitis?**  
C) *Unexplained pruritus, weight loss, and fatigue (Disorders of Multi-Factorial Origin; Intrahepatic Biliary Disorders; Primary Biliary Cholangitis; Clinical Manifestations)*
29. **Phenylbutazone and the sulfonamides can produce**  
C) *granulomas within the liver. (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Toxic and Drug-Induced Hepatitis)*
30. **What is a hepatic abscess?**  
D) *An invasion of the liver by micro-organisms producing a localized collection of pus (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Hepatic Abscess)*
31. **What is the primary mode of transmission for hepatitis A?**  
A) *Fecal-oral route (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Viral Hepatitis; Hepatitis A)*
32. **What is the recommended vaccination schedule for the combination hepatitis A and B vaccine Twinrix?**  
C) *Three doses of 1 mL intramuscularly, with boosters at one and six months (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Viral Hepatitis; Hepatitis A; Therapeutic Measures and Prevention)*
33. **What is the typical incubation period for hepatitis B virus?**  
C) *45 to 180 days (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Viral Hepatitis; Hepatitis B.; Clinical Manifestations)*
34. **What is the primary recommendation for treating patients with chronic hepatitis C infection according to the IDSA/AASLD 2023 guidelines?**  
D) *Treatment is recommended for all patients, except those with a short life expectancy that cannot be remediated. (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Viral Hepatitis; Hepatitis C; Therapeutic Measures)*
35. **What characterizes type 1 autoimmune hepatitis?**  
D) *Increased levels of anti-smooth muscle and antinuclear autoantibodies (Infectious and Inflammatory Disorders; Autoimmune Hepatitis)*
36. **Which of the following is a known etiologic agent in liver cancer?**  
D) *All of the above (Neoplastic and Obstructive Disorders; Cancer of the Liver; Hepatocellular Carcinoma)*
37. **Which of the following statements best describes the management and treatment options for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)?**  
A) *Best survival rates are achieved when the HCC can be removed either by surgical resection or liver transplant. (Neoplastic and Obstructive Disorders; Cancer of the Liver; Hepatocellular Carcinoma; Treatment)*
38. **What are the primary risk factors associated with intrahepatic bile duct cancer (cholangiocarcinoma)?**  
D) *Chronic inflammation and injury of the bile duct epithelium (Neoplastic and Obstructive Disorders; Cancer of the Liver; Cholangiocarcinoma)*
39. **What is the most common symptom of cholelithiasis?**  
A) *Colicky pain (Neoplastic and Obstructive Disorders; Cholelithiasis; Clinical Manifestations)*
40. **Following liver transplantation, what is a common drug regimen used in the immediate post-transplant period to reduce the probability of rejection?**  
D) *Monoclonal antibody, mycophenolate mofetil, corticosteroids, and a calcineurin inhibitor (Liver Transplantation)*

# Course Availability List

These courses may be ordered by mail on the Customer Information form located on page 119.

We encourage you to **GO GREEN**. Access your courses **online** or download as an **eBook** to save paper and **receive a discount** or sign up for **One Year of All Access Online CE starting at only \$85!** Additional titles are also available.

[www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com)



Like us at **NetCEContinuingEducation**

## MODERATE SEDATION/ANALGESIA

#30464 • 15 ANCC / 15 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$98 • ONLINE – \$90

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide nurses with the knowledge required for safe drug delivery based on standardized operational guidelines. Preprocedural, intraprocedural, and postprocedural patient care are presented, as well as a thorough review of the drugs used, their advantages and disadvantages, and the safe administration of these agents.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all nurses, especially those in procedural and diagnostic areas, such as radiology, endoscopy, cardiac cath, outpatient surgery, intensive care, and emergency departments.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

## TREATMENT OF HEART FAILURE: AN UPDATE

#30934 • 10 ANCC / 3 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$68 • ONLINE – \$60

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide nurses and ancillary nursing personnel with current information about the scientific advances in the treatment of acute heart failure.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses and ancillary nurse personnel involved in the treatment and continued assessment of patients with heart failure.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

## COMMUNICATION AND SOFT SKILLS IN NURSING PRACTICE

#31350 • 3 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$26 • ONLINE – \$18

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide nurses with strategies to support the soft skills needed to provide optimal patient care and enhance professionalism in health care.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses in all practice settings.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category C

## BURNOUT: IMPACT ON NURSING AND QUALITY OF CARE

#31434 • 5 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** Given the integral relationship between work-related stress, job dissatisfaction, burnout, and patient care, properly addressing nursing burnout is essential. The purpose of this course is to provide nurses with information to identify burnout and with effective strategies to manage work-related stress and prevent burnout.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses and nurse practitioners at all levels and in all settings, especially oncology, palliative care, mental health, and critical care.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category C, CCMC

## WOMEN AND CORONARY HEART DISEASE

#33224 • 15 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$98 • ONLINE – \$90

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to identify the unique challenges that face women with heart disease, including prevention, diagnosis, and treatment.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all nurses in family practice or medical/surgical areas, especially critical care or cardiac units.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

## DIABETIC HYPOGLYCEMIA

#34654 • 5 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide nurses and healthcare professionals with a foundation of understanding hypoglycemia in order to assure the highest quality of care is provided to patients.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses in any healthcare venue and dietitians with a desire to better understand the causes, recognition, and treatment of hypoglycemia in a variety of settings.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

## ETHICAL DECISION MAKING

#37074 • 15 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$98 • ONLINE – \$90

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to assist healthcare professionals to define the predominant ethical theories and principles used in health care, determine any legal and regulatory implications, and in collaboration with their colleagues and patients/clients, make effective decisions that determine the appropriate course of treatment, or refusal of such, for and with those for whom they care.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all nurses and allied healthcare professionals.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category B, CCMC

## VENOUS DISEASE AND ULCERS

#38632 • 5 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to enable nurses to accurately assess and treat venous disease and venous ulcers and to provide patient and family education for preventive care and lifestyle changes.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses in all care settings who may care for patients with venous disease or ulcers.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

Prices are subject to change. Visit [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com) for a list of current prices.

# Course Availability List (Cont'd)

## CARING FOR THE GERIATRIC PATIENT

#39102 • 3 ANCC Hours

BOOK BY MAIL – \$26 • ONLINE – \$18

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide nurses with an overview of the physical and psychosocial considerations necessary when providing care to geriatric patients.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses in a variety of practice settings who work with older patients.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

---

## PULMONARY EMBOLISM

#90120 • 2 ANCC / 1 PHARM HOUR

BOOK BY MAIL – \$23 • ONLINE – \$15

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals with the knowledge and clinical strategies necessary to optimally triage and treatment patients with pulmonary embolism.

**Audience:** This course is designed for physicians, PAs, and nurses involved in assessing, triaging, and managing patients with suspected pulmonary embolism.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A

---

## ISCHEMIC STROKE

#90284 • 10 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$68 • ONLINE – \$60

**Purpose:** The early identification and management of the risk factors for ischemic stroke can lead to substantial health benefits and reductions in cost. However, research has documented gaps between healthcare professionals' knowledge and practice with respect to prevention, demonstrating that adherence to evidence-based or guideline-endorsed recommendations pertaining to all interventions for primary and secondary prevention are underutilized or ineffective. The purpose of this course is to provide needed information about the roles of diagnosis and screening, timely evaluation of individuals with suspected stroke, immediate treatment of stroke, and the elements of effective rehabilitation programs so that healthcare professionals may implement the necessary interventions appropriately.

**Audience:** This course is designed for physicians, nurses, and physician assistants in the primary care setting. Neurologists and other healthcare practitioners will also benefit from this course.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

---

## AUTISM SPECTRUM DISORDER

#92204 • 5 ANCC / 1 PHARM HOUR

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to educate healthcare professionals about the epidemiology, diagnosis, and management of ASD. Additionally, this course will provide the information necessary to screen children seen in primary care for ASD in order to appropriately refer patients and their families for more expansive assessment and treatment referral as rapidly as possible in order to avoid unnecessary morbidity and mortality.

**Audience:** This course is designed for healthcare professionals in all practice settings who may be involved in the care of patients with an autism spectrum disorder.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

---

## MATERNAL HEALTH DISPARITIES

#93010 • 4 ANCC Hours

BOOK BY MAIL – \$32 • ONLINE – \$24

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare providers with the knowledge and skills necessary to improve maternal outcomes in all races, ethnicities, and marginalized groups.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all healthcare providers who may intervene to improve peripartum and postpartum health care and reduce health disparities.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category B

---

## PREDIABETES: AN OPPORTUNITY TO PREVENT DIABETES

#94194 • 15 ANCC / 7 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$98 • ONLINE – \$90

**Purpose:** Studies have shown that diabetes can be delayed or prevented in people with prediabetes, but risk reduction relies heavily on lifestyle changes on the part of the patients, making education and counseling of vital importance. The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals with the information and skills necessary to effectively deal with this common condition and learn ways to help patients make healthy lifestyle choices.

**Audience:** This course is designed for nurses in adult primary care, clinical, and acute care settings, healthcare and behavioral health professionals in public health and preventive medicine settings, and health education specialists.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A

---

## HYPERTENSION: STRATEGIES TO IMPROVE OUTCOMES

#94223 • 5 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals with the information necessary to develop treatment regimens associated with optimal adherence and provide adequate patient education, counseling, and support to patients with hypertension.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all physicians, physician assistants, nurses, and pharmacy professionals involved in the care of patients with hypertension.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

---

## INFLUENZA: A COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW

#94424 • 10 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$68 • ONLINE – \$60

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals with an updated review of influenza, including clinical aspects, public health issues, and strategies for prevention. The goals are to minimize the burden of influenza on patients and communities, prevent complications and hospitalizations, and save healthcare dollars.

**Audience:** This course is designed to help healthcare professionals and allied personnel understand influenza and their role in its prevention.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

---

Prices are subject to change. Visit [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com) for a list of current prices.

# Course Availability List (Cont'd)

## RESPONSIBLE AND EFFECTIVE OPIOID PRESCRIBING

#95152 • 3 ANCC / 3 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$26 • ONLINE – \$18

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide clinicians who prescribe or distribute opioids with an appreciation for the complexities of opioid prescribing and the dual risks of litigation due to inadequate pain control and drug diversion or misuse in order to provide the best possible patient care and to prevent a growing social problem.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all physicians, osteopaths, physician assistants, pharmacy professionals, and nurses who may alter prescribing practices or intervene to prevent drug diversion and inappropriate opioid use.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

**Special Approvals:** This course meets the Pennsylvania CRNP requirement for 2 hours of pain management, identification of addiction, or the practice of prescribing opioids.

PA CRNP  
Mandate

## SUBSTANCE USE DISORDERS AND PAIN MANAGEMENT: MATE ACT TRAINING

#95300 • 8 ANCC / 8 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$56 • ONLINE – \$48

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide clinicians who prescribe or distribute controlled substances with an appreciation for the complexities of managing patients with substance use disorders and comorbid pain in order to provide the best possible patient care and to prevent a growing social problem.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all healthcare professionals who may alter prescribing practices or intervene to help meet the needs of patients with substance use disorders.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A, CCMC

DEA  
MATE Act

## IMPLICIT BIAS IN HEALTH CARE

#97001 • 3 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$26 • ONLINE – \$18

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals an overview of the impact of implicit biases on clinical interactions and decision making.

**Audience:** This course is designed for the interprofessional healthcare team and professions working in all practice settings.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category B, CCMC

**Special Approvals:** This course meets the one-time California requirement for 1 hour of implicit bias education.

## CANNABINOID OVERVIEW

#98010 • 3 ANCC / 3 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$26 • ONLINE – \$18

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals in all practice settings the knowledge necessary to increase their understanding of the various cannabinoids.

**Audience:** This course is designed for healthcare professionals whose patients are taking or are interested in taking cannabinoid products.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A

NEW!

## DIETS AND DIETARY APPROACHES TO WEIGHT LOSS

#98120 • 4 ANCC HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$32 • ONLINE – \$24

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals in all practice settings the knowledge necessary to counsel patients regarding diets and dietary approaches to weight management.

**Audience:** This course is designed for all physicians, nurses, and allied professionals involved in the care of patients who are interested in exploring dietary options to weight control.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A

NEW!

## SUPPLEMENTS FOR AGING

#98190 • 5 ANCC / 5 PHARM HOURS

BOOK BY MAIL – \$38 • ONLINE – \$30

**Purpose:** The purpose of this course is to provide healthcare professionals in all practice settings the knowledge necessary to increase their understanding of the supplements that may be used by their older adult patients.

**Audience:** This course is designed for healthcare professionals whose older patients are taking or are interested in supplements.

**Additional Approvals:** AACN Synergy CERP Category A

NEW!

Prices are subject to change. Visit [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com) for a list of current prices.





# Customer Information

(Incomplete information may delay processing.)

For office use only:

PA25 \_\_\_\_\_

Please print your Customer ID # located on the back of this catalog. (Optional)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Last Name \_\_\_\_\_ First Name \_\_\_\_\_ MI \_\_\_\_\_

State \_\_\_\_\_ License # \_\_\_\_\_ Exp. \_\_\_\_\_

State \_\_\_\_\_ Additional License # \_\_\_\_\_ Exp. \_\_\_\_\_

License Type (circle one): RN / CNS / CRNP / CRNA / CNM / Other: \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip \_\_\_\_\_

Phone (      ) \_\_\_\_\_

Email \_\_\_\_\_

Sign me up for NetCE Alerts, Promotions, License Reminders, and More!

Receive certificate(s) by:

Online Access - FREE! Email required

Email - FREE!

Mail - Add \$6 for shipping and handling

Order/complete by mail  
**P.O. Box 997571**  
**Sacramento, CA 95899-7571**

Contact us  
**(800) 232-4238**

Email us  
**help@NetCE.com**

Order/complete online  
**www.NetCE.com/PA25**

<p>Price BEFORE December 31, 2025</p> <p><b>\$48.95</b></p> <p>Price AFTER December 31, 2025</p> <p><b>\$63</b></p>	<h2>ENCLOSED SPECIAL OFFER: 30 HOURS</h2> <p>You may complete ALL four of these courses for a maximum payment of \$48.95 (or pay the individual course price).</p>		
	✓ Course #	Course Title / Contact Hours	Price
	97543	Child Abuse Identification and Reporting: The Pennsylvania Requirement / 3 Contact Hours	\$18
	38130	The B Vitamins / 2 Contact Hours	\$15
	94820	Chronic Cough in Adults / 10 Contact Hours	\$60
	38910	Pathophysiology: The Hepatobiliary System / 15 Contact Hours	\$90

**Additional Courses Available by Mail (ACCESS ONLINE FOR A DISCOUNT!)**  
 Payment must accompany this form. To order by phone, please have your credit card ready.

✓ Course #	Course Title / Contact Hours	Price	✓ Course #	Course Title / Contact Hours	Price
<input type="checkbox"/> 30464	Moderate Sedation/Analgesia / 15 .....	\$98	<input type="checkbox"/> 92204	Autism Spectrum Disorder /5.....	\$38
<input type="checkbox"/> 30934	Treatment of Heart Failure: An Update / 10.....	\$68	<input type="checkbox"/> 93010	Maternal Health Disparities / 4.....	\$32
<input type="checkbox"/> 31350	Communication & Soft Skills in Nursing Practice / 3.....	\$26	<input type="checkbox"/> 94194	Prediabetes: An Opportunity to Prevent Diabetes / 15..	\$98
<input type="checkbox"/> 31434	Burnout: Impact on Nursing and Quality of Care / 5.....	\$38	<input type="checkbox"/> 94223	Hypertension: Strategies to Improve Outcomes / 5.....	\$38
<input type="checkbox"/> 33224	Women and Coronary Heart Disease / 15.....	\$98	<input type="checkbox"/> 94424	Influenza: A Comprehensive Review / 10 .....	\$68
<input type="checkbox"/> 34654	Diabetic Hypoglycemia / 5.....	\$38	<input type="checkbox"/> 95152	Responsible and Effective Opioid Prescribing / 3.....	\$26
<input type="checkbox"/> 37074	Ethical Decision Making / 15.....	\$98	<input type="checkbox"/> 95300	Substance Use Disorders & Pain Mgmt: MATE Act / 8..	\$56
<input type="checkbox"/> 38632	Venous Disease and Ulcers / 5.....	\$38	<input type="checkbox"/> 97001	Implicit Bias in Health Care / 3.....	\$26
<input type="checkbox"/> 39102	Caring for the Geriatric Patient / 3 .....	\$26	<input type="checkbox"/> 98010	Cannabinoid Overview / 3.....	\$26
<input type="checkbox"/> 90120	Pulmonary Embolism / 2.....	\$23	<input type="checkbox"/> 98120	Diets and Dietary Approaches to Weight Loss / 4.....	\$32
<input type="checkbox"/> 90284	Ischemic Stroke / 10 .....	\$68	<input type="checkbox"/> 98190	Supplements for Aging / 5.....	\$38

- Check or Money Order (payable to NetCE)
- VISA / MasterCard / AmEx / Discover

Special Offer (BEFORE December 31, 2025) **\$48.95**

\$63 (AFTER December 31, 2025) \_\_\_\_\_

Please print name (as shown on credit card)

Credit card # \_\_\_\_\_

Expiration date \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ Security code \_\_\_\_\_

Security code is last three numbers in the signature area on back of credit card or four numbers above the account number on front of AmEx cards.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

I would like my certificates mailed for an additional \$6 \_\_\_\_\_

Additional Courses \_\_\_\_\_

Subtotal \_\_\_\_\_

Expedited mail delivery within 2 to 3 days is available in most areas at an additional charge of \$35.

Expedited Delivery \_\_\_\_\_

Call for information on international delivery.

**Grand Total** \_\_\_\_\_

Prices are subject to change. Visit [www.NetCE.com](http://www.NetCE.com) for a list of current prices.

This page is perforated for easy removal.

Last Name \_\_\_\_\_ First Name \_\_\_\_\_ MI \_\_\_\_\_  
 State \_\_\_\_\_ License # \_\_\_\_\_ Expiration Date \_\_\_\_\_

**To receive continuing education credit, completion of this Evaluation is mandatory.  
 Please answer all of the following questions and provide your signature at the bottom of this page.  
 Your postmark or facsimile date will be used as your completion date.**

**Please read the following questions and choose the most appropriate answer for each course completed.**

1. Was the course content new or review?
2. How many self-assessment questions did you answer correctly? \_\_\_\_\_ Questions
3. How much time did you spend on this activity, including the questions? \_\_\_\_\_ Hours
4. Would you recommend this course to your peers?
5. Did the course content support the stated course objective?
6. Did the course content demonstrate the author's knowledge of the subject?
7. Was the course content free of bias?
8. Before completing the course, did you identify the necessity for education on the topic to improve your professional practice?
9. Have you achieved all of the stated learning objectives of this course?
10. Has what you think or feel about this topic changed?
11. Were self-assessment questions with evaluation an effective teaching strategy?
12. Did evidence-based practice recommendations assist in determining the validity or relevance of the information?
13. Are you more confident in your ability to provide patient care after completing this course?
14. Do you plan to make changes in your practice as a result of this course content?

**In accordance with the reporting requirements of Act 31, please provide the following information for course #97543:**

15. Please provide the last four digits of your social security number.
16. Please provide your date of birth.

**#97543**  
**PA Child Abuse**  
**Identification and Reporting**  
 3 Contact Hours

1.  New  Review
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Questions
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Hours
4.  Yes  No
5.  Yes  No
6.  Yes  No
7.  Yes  No
8.  Yes  No
9.  Yes  No
10.  Yes  No
11.  Yes  No
12.  N/A
13.  Yes  No
14.  Yes  No
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_  
(mm/dd/yyyy)

**#38130**  
**The B Vitamins**  
 2 Contact Hours

1.  New  Review
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Questions
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Hours
4.  Yes  No
5.  Yes  No
6.  Yes  No
7.  Yes  No
8.  Yes  No
9.  Yes  No
10.  Yes  No
11.  Yes  No
12.  N/A
13.  Yes  No
14.  Yes  No

**#94820**  
**Chronic Cough**  
**in Adults**  
 10 Contact Hours

1.  New  Review
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Questions
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Hours
4.  Yes  No
5.  Yes  No
6.  Yes  No
7.  Yes  No
8.  Yes  No
9.  Yes  No
10.  Yes  No
11.  Yes  No
12.  N/A
13.  Yes  No
14.  Yes  No

**#38910**  
**Pathophysiology:**  
**The Hepatobiliary System**  
 15 Contact Hours

1.  New  Review
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Questions
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Hours
4.  Yes  No
5.  Yes  No
6.  Yes  No
7.  Yes  No
8.  Yes  No
9.  Yes  No
10.  Yes  No
11.  Yes  No
12.  N/A
13.  Yes  No
14.  Yes  No

Additional Comments / Criticisms / Concerns: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

I have read the course(s) and completed the Evaluation(s) in full.  
 I understand my postmark or facsimile date will be used as my completion date.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_  
*Signature required to receive continuing education credit.*

# Want More CE Choices?

## Get One Year of All Access Online CE starting at only \$85\*!

Includes access to our entire course library of more than 1,700 hours, including over 650 pharmacology hours, special offers, and state-required courses!

The following Online Specials are included with your Online All Access Subscription or may be purchased individually.

### **NURSES:**

#### **NATURAL MEDICINE SPECIAL OFFER**

Cannabinoids • Top-Selling Supplements • Commonly Abused Supplements • Acupuncture • Microbiome Medley • Glucosamine and Chondroitin • The Scoop on Collagen  
**17.5 Hours \$49**

#### **WOUND MANAGEMENT SPECIAL OFFER**

Pressure Injuries and Skin Care • Hyperglycemia and Wound Management • Treating Pressure Injuries and Chronic Wounds  
**15 Hours \$41**

#### **TRAUMA SPECIAL OFFER**

Postoperative Complications • Transport Methods for the Critically Ill Patient  
**30 Hours \$62**

### **ADVANCED PRACTICE NURSES:**

#### **DESIGN A DEAL SPECIAL OFFER**

Choose from our entire library of courses to create your own unique Special Offer.

**\$52 to \$73 (Based on number of hours selected)**  
[NetCE.com/Design](https://www.netce.com/Design)

#### **ADVANCED PRACTICE SPECIAL OFFER**

Opioid Safety • Psychedelic Medicine • Acute Coronary Syndrome  
**30 Hours (includes 23 Pharm Hours) \$73**

#### **PHARMACOLOGY SPECIAL OFFER**

Epidural Analgesia Update • Diabetes Pharmacology • Moderate Sedation/Analgesia  
**30 Hours (includes 28 Pharm Hours) \$73**

\*APRNs, get One Year of All Access Online CE for \$139. Includes over 650 Pharmacology hours.

For more details, go to [NetCE.com/AllAccessNurse](https://www.netce.com/AllAccessNurse) (Nurses), or [NetCE.com/AllAccessAPRN](https://www.netce.com/AllAccessAPRN) (APRNs).

**BUSINESS HOURS:** Monday through Friday, 7am-6pm Pacific Time. We are closed on weekends and holidays.

**CUSTOMER SERVICE:** 800-232-4238 or [help@netce.com](mailto:help@netce.com). Call or email us for customer assistance, course catalogs, additional certificates, or transcripts. If you require special assistance, please contact the Director of Development and Academic Affairs to inform her of your needs by calling 800-232-4238.

**RETURN POLICY:** Satisfaction guaranteed or your money back within 30 days of purchase, unless certificates have been issued. Please return the materials and include a brief note of explanation. For more information, please contact [help@NetCE.com](mailto:help@NetCE.com).

**TURNAROUND TIME:** If sent by mail, your order is processed within 2 to 3 weeks from the day it was received. **For the fastest processing time, visit [www.NetCE.com](https://www.netce.com) to purchase, complete for credit, and receive your certificates instantly.**

**MAILING PREFERENCES:** To modify your mailing preferences or to view our privacy policy, please go to [www.NetCE.com](https://www.netce.com).

**PRICING:** Prices are subject to change. Visit [www.NetCE.com](https://www.netce.com) for a list of current prices.

**RETURNED CHECKS:** If, for any reason, your check is returned, you will be contacted requesting a cashier's check or money order for the full amount of the order plus a \$35 reinstatement fee. In addition, we are unable to accept temporary checks.

If you have questions about your license or certification renewal or state requirements, please contact your board. A list of approvals and accreditations is available on our website at [www.NetCE.com](https://www.netce.com).

GET IT ALL  
IN ONE CLICK

**ALL  
ACCESS**

Get the largest  
CE library online

GET UNLIMITED CE

SCAN HERE

[NetCE.com/AllAccessAPRN](https://www.netce.com/AllAccessAPRN)



NetCE | P.O. Box 997571 | Sacramento, CA 95899 | 800-232-4238

Copyright © 2024 NetCE, Sacramento, CA



P.O. Box 997571  
Sacramento, CA 95899

PRESORTED  
STANDARD  
U.S. POSTAGE PAID  
PERMIT NO. 182  
SACRAMENTO, CA

Vol. 150  
No. 12  
**PAAPRN25**

Complete online at [NetCE.com/PAAPRN25](https://NetCE.com/PAAPRN25)

Quick Code#

Customer ID#

ANYTIME, ANYWHERE, ONLINE CE

## Choose the CE Option that Works Best for You



Looking to save? **Complete Your Special Offer!**

- Tailored for you: Easily meet your CE requirements.
- Hassle-free: Pre-selected courses for your convenience.

**[NetCE.com/PAAPRN25](https://NetCE.com/PAAPRN25)**



Need more hours? **Upgrade to All Access**

- Unlimited CE: Access the largest course library for \$139.
- Massive Library: 650+ pharmacology hours available.

**[NetCE.com/AllAccessAPRN](https://NetCE.com/AllAccessAPRN)**

**Scan Now to Get Started:**

Scan the QR code to choose from state compliance offers, specialty bundles, individual courses, and more.

